

PROVISIONAL APPLICATION FOR PATENT COVER SHEET

This is a request for filing a PROVISIONAL APPLICATION FOR PATENT under 37 CFR §1.53(c).

INVENTOR(S)					
Given Name (first and middle (if any))	Family Name or Surname	Residence (City and either State or Foreign Country)			
Gilbert Gregory	Keller Frost	San Diego, CA Del Mar, CA			
Additional inventors are being named on the <u>0</u> separately numbered sheets attached hereto					
TITLE OF THE APPLICATION (500 characters max)					
IN VIVO TEMPORAL CONTROL OF ACTIVATABLE MATRIX-DEGRADING ENZYMES					
CORRESPONDENCE ADDRESS					
Direct all correspondence to:					
☒ Customer Number: 77202					
OR					
☒ Firm or Individual Name		Stephanie L. Seidman Bell, Boyd & Lloyd LLP			
Address		P.O. Box 309015			
Address					
City	San Diego	State	CA	ZIP	92130-9015
Country	United States	Telephone	(858) 509-7410	Fax	(858) 509-7460
ENCLOSED APPLICATION PARTS (check all that apply)					
☒ Specification	Number of Pages	166	☒ CD(s), Number	2 (copy 1 and copy 2)	
☐ Drawing(s)	Number of Sheets		☒ Other (specify)	CD Transmittal (1 page in duplicate) Return Postcard	
☐ Application Data Sheet. See 37 CFR 1.76.					
METHOD OF PAYMENT OF FILING FEES FOR THIS PROVISIONAL APPLICATION FOR PATENT					
☐ Applicant Claims small entity status. See 37 CFR 1.27.				FILING FEE	
☐ A check or money order is enclosed to cover the filing fees.				AMOUNT (\$)	
☒ The Commissioner is hereby authorized to charge any fees, including any due herein, that may be required in this application during its entire pendency, or credit any overpayment, to Deposit Account No. 02-1818. If proper payment is not enclosed, such as a check in the wrong amount, unsigned, post-dated, otherwise improper or informal, or absent, the Commissioner is authorized to charge the unpaid amount or total amount due to Deposit Account No. 06-1050 during the entire pendency of this application. This sheet is filed in triplicate.				\$210.00	
The invention was made by an agency of the United States Government or under a contract with an agency of the United States Government.					
☒ No.					
☐ Yes, the name of the U.S. Government agency and the Government contract number are:					

Respectfully submitted,

Signature

Typed Name Stephanie L. Seidman, Reg. No. 33,779

Telephone No. (858) 509-7410

Date March 6, 2008

Docket No. 119374-00046 (P3056)

CERTIFICATE OF MAILING BY "EXPRESS MAIL"
945092/D/1

"Express Mail" Mailing Label Number EB 889663169 US
Date of Deposit March 6, 2008

I hereby certify that this paper is being deposited with the United States Postal "Express Mail Post Office to Addressee" Service under 37 CFR §1.10 on the date indicated above and is addressed to: Commissioner for Patents, U.S. Patent and Trademark Office, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA, 22313-1450.

Stephanie Seidman

IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

Applicant : Keller et al.
Serial No. : Not yet assigned
Filed : Herewith
Conf. No. : Not yet assigned
Title : **IN VIVO TEMPORAL CONTROL OF ACTIVATABLE MATRIX-DEGRADING ENZYMES**
Art Unit : Not yet assigned
Examiner : Not yet assigned
Cust. No. : 77202

Commissioner for Patents
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria, VA 22313-1450

COMPACT DISC TRANSMITTAL LETTER

Dear Sir:

Transmitted herewith are duplicate compact discs (CD-R) of the Sequence Listing (labeled Copy # 1 and Copy # 2). The two compact discs are identical. The computer-readable file on each of the aforementioned compact discs created on March 6, 2008 was made using an IBM-PC machine format with MS-Windows operating system compatibility. The computer-readable file on the compact discs is identical, 901 kilobytes in size, and is entitled p3056SEQ.001.3-6-08.txt.

☒ The Commissioner is hereby authorized to charge the fee for the extension of time and any other fee that may be due in connection with this and the attached papers or with this application during its entire pendency to Deposit Account No. 06-1050. A duplicate of this sheet is enclosed.

Respectfully submitted,

Stephanie Seidman
Reg. No. 33,779

Attorney Docket No. 119374-00046(P3056)
Address all correspondence to: 77202
Stephanie Seidman
Bell, Boyd & Lloyd LLP
P.O. Box 309015
San Diego, CA 91230-9015
Telephone: (858) 509-7410
Facsimile: (858) 509-7460
Email: sseidman@bellboyd.com

CERTIFICATE OF MAILING BY "EXPRESS MAIL"
945195/D/1
"Express Mail" Mailing Label Number EB 889663169 US
Date of Deposit March 6, 2008
I hereby certify that this paper is being deposited with the United States Postal "Express Mail Post Office to Addressee" Service under 37 CFR §1.10 on the date indicated above and is addressed to: Commissioner for Patents, U.S. Patent and Trademark Office, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA, 22313-1450.

Stephanie Seidman

IN VIVO TEMPORAL CONTROL OF ACTIVATABLE MATRIX-DEGRADING ENZYMES

Incorporation by reference of Sequence Listing provided on compact discs

5 An electronic version on compact disc (CD-R) of the Sequence Listing is filed herewith in duplicate (labeled Copy # 1 and Copy # 2), the contents of which are incorporated by reference in their entirety. The computer-readable file on each of the aforementioned compact discs, created on March 6, 2008, is identical, 901 kilobytes in size, and titled p3056SEQ.001.3-6-08.txt.

FIELD OF THE INVENTION

10 Methods and combinations are provided for controlling the duration of action, *in vivo*, of matrix-degrading enzymes. The methods and combinations permit temporary *in vivo* activation of matrix-degrading enzymes upon administration to the extra cellular matrix (or "ECM"). Matrix-degrading enzymes having a controlled duration of action can be used to treat ECM-mediated diseases or disorders
15 characterized by increased deposition or accumulation of one or more ECM components.

BACKGROUND

The extracellular matrix (ECM) provides a critical structural support for cells and tissues. Defects or changes in the extracellular matrix as a result of excessive
20 deposition or accumulation of ECM components can lead to ECM-mediated diseases or conditions. Among these are collagen-mediated diseases or conditions characterized by the presence of abundant fibrous septae of collagen. Often the only approved treatment for such diseases or conditions is surgery, which can be highly invasive. Other treatments, such as needle aponeurotomy for the treatment of
25 Dupuytren's syndrome or liposuction for cellulite, also are highly invasive.

Collagenase, an enzyme active at neutral pH that degrades collagen, has been used to treat ECM-mediated conditions such as cellulite (see e.g., published U.S. application serial No. US20070224184); Dupuytren's syndrome (see e.g. U.S. Patent No. USRE39941; 5589171; 6086872); and Peyronie's disease (see e.g., U.S. Patent
30 6022539). Collagenase, however, is capable of irreversibly cleaving collagens of type I, II and III. The prolonged activity of collagenase limits the dosages that can be administered and also risks side effects associated with prolonged activation. Hence, there is a need for alternative treatments of ECM-mediated diseases and conditions. Accordingly, it is among the objects herein to provide methods and combinations of

activatable matrix-degrading enzymes for the treatment of ECM-mediated diseases and conditions.

SUMMARY

Provided are methods for treating diseases or conditions of the extracellular matrix (ECM) by administering an activatable matrix-degrading enzyme (AMDE) and an activator. Generally a therapeutically effective amount of the AMDE is administered. The amount is a function of the disease or condition treated and can be empirically determined. The AMDE that is selected is one that is inactive in the *in vivo* locus of administration, such as the ECM. AMDEs including naturally-occurring MD enzymes, species and allelic and other variants thereof, such as enzymes modified to alter an activity, such as substrate specificity or property, such as stability. The AMDEs can be modified by processes and methods to have properties, such as increased specificity for a cleaving a particular type of collagen or to have an altered pH curve or optimum for the methods herein. Administration in conjunction with an activator, not present in the locus of administration results in an AMDE that is active for a limited period of time as the activator dissipates or is otherwise removed from the locus. The AMDE and activator administered sequentially, simultaneously in the same or separate composition, or intermittently. Conditions can be selected so that the period of time of activity is predetermined. An AMDE can require more than one activator for activity or full activity. The AMDE can be administered as a zymogen, as a full-length mature polypeptide, such as a single-chain or two chain polypeptide, or as precursor polypeptide. The AMDE can be provided in a compositions, such as a solution or suspension, or in crystallized or lyophilized form. Exemplary AMDEs include, but are not limited to, cathepsins, calpains and heparanases.

Generally, the AMDE is administered sub-epidermally. When administered to other loci, including topically, the AMDE is selected so that it is the AMDE is substantially active (typically at least about or 10%, 11%, 12%, 13% or 15% of the activity compared to at its pH maximum remains) at pH 5.5. In addition, for such administration, the AMDE typically is inactive (less than about or 10%, 11%, 12%, 13% or 15%) of the activity remains. Diseases and conditions of the ECM, include for example, collagen-mediated diseases and conditions. Such diseases and conditions include, but are not limited to: cellulite; Dupuytren's disease surgical adhesions, keloids, hypertrophic scars and depressed scars; Peyronie's disease; Ledderhose fibrosis; stiff joints; including a frozen shoulder; existing scars, including

surgical adhesions, keloids, hypertrophic scars and depressed scars; scleroderma; lymphedema and collagenous colitis. Sub-epidermal administration includes, but is not limited to subcutaneous administration, intramuscular administration, intralesional administration and intradermal administration.

5 Thus, provided are methods for treating a disease or condition of the extracellular matrix (ECM) by sub-epidermally administering to the ECM an activatable matrix-degrading enzyme (AMDE) and an activator. The AMDE is inactive in the ECM in the absence of the activator, the activator, when administered to the ECM, provides an activating condition for the enzyme whereby the AMDE is
10 active, and the activating condition is not present in the ECM prior to administration of the activator. In some embodiments the AMDE is selected to be an enzyme that is substantially inactive at neutral pH.

 Also provided are methods treating a disease or condition of the extracellular matrix (ECM) by administering an activatable matrix-degrading enzyme (AMDE) and
15 an activator, wherein the AMDE is inactive at neutral pH, the activator provides an acidic pH activating condition for the enzyme such that the AMDE is active upon or after administration, and the activating condition is not present at the site of administration prior to administration of the activator; and the AMDE is substantially active at pH 5.5. The AMDE and activator can be administered by any suitable
20 route, including, but are not limited to, subcutaneous, intramuscular, intralesional, intradermal, topical, transdermal, intravenous, oral and rectal administration. For example, administration can be sub-epidermal administration.

 Also provided are methods for treating a disease or condition of the extracellular matrix (ECM) by administering an activatable matrix-degrading enzyme
25 (AMDE) and an activator, where the AMDE is inactive in the ECM in the absence of the activator, the activator, when administered, provides an activating condition for the enzyme such that the AMDE is active, the activating condition is not present in the ECM prior to administration of the activator, the activator is selected from among a metal ion, temperature and ionic strength. The AMDE and activator can be
30 administered by any suitable route, including, but are not limited to, subcutaneous, intramuscular, intralesional, intradermal, topical, transdermal, intravenous, oral and rectal administration. For example, administration can be sub-epidermal administration.

In an exemplary embodiments, provided are methods for treating a disease or condition of the extracellular matrix (ECM) by administering to the ECM an activatable matrix-degrading enzyme (AMDE) and an activator, where the AMDE is inactive in the ECM in the absence of the activator, the activator, when administered to the ECM, provides an activating condition for the enzyme such that the AMDE is active, the activating condition is not present in the ECM prior to administration of the activator; and the activator is selected from among metal ions, temperature and ionic strength. The AMDE and activator can be administered by any suitable route, including, but are not limited to, subcutaneous, intramuscular, intralesional, intradermal, topical, transdermal, intravenous, oral and rectal administration. For example, administration can be sub-epidermal administration.

In other exemplary embodiments provide are methods for treating a collagen-mediated disease or condition by sub-epidermally administering to the ECM a therapeutically effective amount of an activatable cathepsin L and an activator, where the activatable cathepsin L is inactive in the ECM in the absence of the activator, the activator, when administered to the ECM, provides an activating condition for the enzyme such that the activatable cathepsin L is active, the activating condition is not present in the ECM prior to administration of the activator; and the activating condition is acidic pH. Exemplary cathepsin L polypeptides are those that include a sequence of amino acids set forth in SEQ ID NO:1 or allelic, species or other variant thereof, where such variants are modified to have altered properties or activities and, typically have at least or have 60%, 65%, 70%, 75%, 80%, 85%, 90%, 91%, 92%, 93%, 94%, 95%, 96%, 97%, 98% or 99% sequence identity compared to a sequence of amino acids set forth in any of SEQ ID NO: 1.

In general over time in the methods herein, the activator will be removed or dissipated or neutralized by the local environment so that the AMDE is no longer active. Activating conditions and/or activators can be selected or prepared so that the AMDE is active for a limited or predetermined time. The activator can be provided are administered in the same composition as the AMDE or in a separate composition, and they can be administered sequentially, simultaneously or intermittently. For example, the AMDE is exposed to the activator prior to administration or upon administration, whereby the enzyme is active upon administration. Activating conditions include, but are not limited to, pH, ionic strength, temperature and metal ions. Among the activating conditions is pH, such as acidic pH, for example at or

about in a range of 3 to 6.5, or 3.5 to 6, or 3 to 5.5, or 3 to 4.5, or 4 to 6, or 4 to 5.5, or 4.5 to 5, or 5 to 6, such as 3, 3.5, 4, 4.5, 5, 5.5, 6 or 6.5. pH can be obtained by contacting the AMDE with a buffered solution at with desired pH. Buffers can include an acid selected from among 2-(N-morpholino)ethanesulfonic acid) (MES),
 5 acetic acid, citric acid, citric phosphate and histidine. Other exemplary activity conditions include, but are not limited to, metal ions and temperature. For example, the activating condition can be a metal ion, such as Ca^{2+} . Temperature can be low or high temperature, where the enzyme is substantially inactive at the temperature of the locus of administration, typically 37°C. Thus, the activating condition is temperature
 10 and the temperature is or is about 20°C, 21°C, 22°C, 23°C, 24°C, 25°C, 26°C, 27°C, 28°C, 29°C, 30°C. or above 37°C, such as 40°C, 41°C, 42°C, 43°C, 44°C, 45°C, 46°C, 47°C, 48°C, 49°C, 50°C, 55°C, 60°C, 65°C, 70°C, 80°C and higher up to any temperature tolerated that does not damage *in vivo* tissues or cells.

Temporal control of the activity can be achieved, for example, by selection of
 15 the buffering capacity of the buffer and/or ionic strength thereof. A predetermined time for activity can be effected by selection of such conditions, which can be determined empirically or by any method known to one of skill in the art. Predetermined times can range from less than or about a minute to hours, such as about or 1 minute, 2 minute, 3 minute, 4 minute, 5 minute, 6 minute, 7 minute, 8
 20 minute, 9 minute, 10 minute, 20 minute, 30 minute, 40 minute, 50 minute, 1 hour, 2 hour, 3 hour and 4 hours.

As noted any an AMDE can be an matrix degrading enzyme that is activatable or that is modified so that it is activatable by a particular activator or activation condition. Among the AMDEs for use in the methods herein are lysosomal enzymes.
 25 AMDEs include, for example, . cathepsins, such as cathepsins that cysteine or aspartic proteases. These include, for example, cathepsin S, cathepsin K, cathepsin L, cathepsin B, cathepsin C, cathepsin H, cathepsin F, cathepsin O, cathepsin R, cathepsin V, cathepsin W, cathepsin D and cathepsin E. Exemplary of such cathepsins are any selected from a cathepsin that has a sequence of amino acids set
 30 forth in any of SEQ ID NOS: 57, 60, 1, 65, 180, 68, 71, 74, 77, 183, 186, 189, 80, 195, 90, 93 and 96, or an allelic, or species variant or other variant of any of SEQ ID NOS: 57, 60, 1, 65, 180, 68, 71, 74, 77, 183, 186, 189, 80, 195, 90, 93 and 96. Other variants, include, for example, enzymes modified to have an altered property, such as stability, or activity, such as substrate specificity. Variants can have, for example,

60%, 65%, 70%, 75%, 80%, 85%, 90%, 91%, 92%, 93%, 94%, 95%, 96%, 97%, 98%, 99% more sequence identify with any of the polypeptides whose sequence of amino acids is set forth in any of SEQ ID NOS: 57, 60, 1, 65, 180, 68, 71, 74, 77, 183, 186, 189, 80, 195, 90, 93 and 96.

5 In the methods herein, the AMDE, upon administration, can cleave any one or more extracellular matrix (ECM) components. Such cleavage occurs for a limited time, which can be predetermined. ECM components that are cleaved, include, but are not limited to, for example, collagens, elastins a fibronetins and proteoglycans, such as a type I, type II, type III or type IV collagen. The AMDEs can be modified, 10 such as by directed evolution methods or other methods, to have altered properties or activities, such as increased substrate specificity for type I collagen over type IV collagen.

Other agents can be administered with the activator and enzymes. Administration can be in the same composition as the activator and/or enzyme or as separate 15 compositions. Administration can be simultaneously, separately or intermittently. Exemplary agents, include, but are not limited to, for example, pharmacologic agents selected from among other biologics, small molecule compounds, dispersing agents, anesthetics and vasoconstrictors and/or combinations thereof. Exemplary of a dispersing agent is a hyaluronidase, such as PH20, such as a soluble form thereof, 20 particularly rHuPH20. Such hyaluronidase typically is administered prior to administration of the enzyme and activator. Exemplary of a soluble hyaluronidase is the product designated rHuPH20, which is encoded by nucleic acid the encodes a polypeptide that a sequence of amino acids set forth in SEQ ID NO:226, or is an allelic or species variant or other variant thereof or a variant of such polypeptide that 25 has at least about 60%, 65%, 70%, 75%, 80%, 85%, 90%, 95%, 96%, 97%, 98%, 99% or more sequence identity to the sequence of amino acids set forth in SEQ ID NO:226. 183.

Other agents, include anesthetics, such as lidocaine, and vasoconstrictors, such as is an alpha adrenergic receptor agonists, including, for example, levonordefrin, 30 epinephrine and norepinephrine. Typically such agents are administered with or before the AMDE and activator. Thus, provided are methods of treating a disease or condition of the extracellular matrix (ECM) by sub-epidermally administering an activatable matrix-degrading enzyme (AMDE), as described above, an activator, a hyaluronidase, lidocaine and epinephrine. The AMDE is inactive in the ECM in the

absence of the activator. The enzyme, hyaluronidase, lidocaine and epinephrine can be administered simultaneously, sequentially or intermittently, provided that the lidocaine is administered prior to the enzyme. For example, the hyaluronidase, lidocaine and epinephrine are administered prior to administration of the enzyme or the hyaluronidase, lidocaine and epinephrine are administered simultaneously or the hyaluronidase, lidocaine and epinephrine can be administered in a single composition. The AMDE and activator and other agents can be administered by any suitable route, including, but are not limited to, subcutaneous, intramuscular, intralesional, intradermal, topical, transdermal, intravenous, oral and rectal administration. For example, administration can be sub-epidermal administration.

Also provided are products, including compositions, containers, combinations and kits that can be used to effect the methods. For example, provided are containers that contain two compartments. A first compartment contains a therapeutically effective amount of an activatable matrix-degrading enzyme (AMDE), where the amount is for single dosage or a plurality of dosages and a single dosage is effective for treatment of a disease or condition of the ECM ; and a second compartment contains an activator, where the activator is one that activates the enzyme. AMDEs include, for example lysosomal enzymes, such as cathepsins, calpains and heparanases, including those described above for use in the methods. The AMDEs in the containers are those as described above, including, for example, an AMDE that is substantially active at pH 5.5, and, optionally is substantially inactive at neutral pH. The activators provide for activating conditions such as those described above. Hence the second compartment can contain a composition that effects a change or maintains a pH, such as a buffer, or ionic strength or provides a metal ion, such as Ca^{2+} . Exemplary buffers include 2-(N-morpholino)ethanesulfonic acid (MES), acetic acid, citric acid, citric phosphate and histidine. The diseases and conditions, include those described above. The containers can also include a mixing compartment to effect mixing of the components in the first and second compartments. Exemplary containers, include tubes and bottles, sterile containers, such a syringe, with or without a needle for injection.

The AMDE and activator are provided in an amount for single or multiple dosage administration. The AMDE in the container can be provided in an amount that is or is about 10 μg to 100 mg, 50 μg to 75 mg, 100 μg to 50 mg, 250 μg to 25 mg, 500 μg to 10 mg, 1 mg to 5 mg, or 2 mg to 4 mg. It can be provided as solid,

such as crystallized form or lyophilized form, or in liquid form, such as solution or suspension or other suitable form. The total volume of liquid in the container, for example, can be or is about 1 -100 ml, 1 -50 ml, 10- 50 ml, 10-30 ml, 1-20 ml, and 1-10 ml.

5 In an exemplary embodiment provided are containers that have at least two compartments, where a first compartment contains a therapeutically effective amount of an activatable cathepsin L and the amount is effective for treatment of a disease or condition of the extracellular matrix (ECM); and a second compartment contains an acidic buffer that is one that activates the cathepsin L. The diseases and conditions
10 are those described above for the method of treatment. The activator can be pH that is provided by a buffer, particularly an acidic buffer has a range that is or is about pH 4.5 to 6, particularly, 4.5, 5, 5.5 or 6. Exemplary buffers are among 2-(N-morpholino)ethanesulfonic acid) (MES), acetic acid, citric acid, citric phosphate and histidine. Exemplary cathepsin L polypeptides are those that include a sequence of
15 amino acids set forth in SEQ ID NO:1 or allelic, species or other variant thereof, where such variants are modified to have altered properties or activities and, typically have at least or have 60%, 65%, 70%, 75%, 80%, 85%, 90%, 91%, 92%, 93%, 94%, 95%, 96%, 97%, 98% or 99% sequence identity compared to a sequence of amino acids set forth in any of SEQ ID NO: 1. The activatable cathepsin L can be provided
20 as lyophilized powder, particularly of an activated mature form that is two-chain or single-chain form. The amount of activatable cathepsin L in the container is therapeutically effective for the particular disease or condition, and can range, for example, about or: 10 µg to or 100 mg, 50 µg to 75 mg, 100 µg to 50 mg, 250 µg to 25 mg, 500 µg to 10 mg, 1 mg to 5 mg and 2 mg to 4 mg. The particular amount can
25 depend on the particular disease or condition, and, if necessary, can be empirically determined. The cathepsin L can be provided as a solid, such as a lyophilized powder, a paste or liquid, such as a suspension, dispersion, or solution. The volume in the container is suitable for the amount of cathepsin L and the intended route and/or locus of administration. For example, a typical volume in the container is or is about 1
30 -100 ml, 1 -50 ml, 10- 50 ml, 10-30 ml, 1-20 ml, or 1-10 ml.

Also provided are combinations that include the above-described container(s) and one or more additional containers containing another pharmacologically effective agent. Such agents can be selected from among biologics, small molecule compounds, dispersing agents, anesthetics and vasoconstrictors and combinations

thereof. These agents include the agents and amounts as described above with reference to the methods. For example, an additional container can contain a hyaluronidase, such as rHuPH20. The amount can be for example about/or: 10 Units to 500,000 Units, 100 Units to 100,000 Units, 500 Units to 50,000 Units, 1000 Units to 10,000 Units, 5000 Units to 7500 Units, 5000 Units to 50,000 Units, or 1,000 Units to 10,000 Units. Other containers can contain anesthetics, such as lidocaine, in an amount, for example of at or about 10 mg to 1000 mg, 100 mg to 500 mg, 200 mg to 400 mg, 20 mg to 60 mg, or 30 mg to 50 mg, and/or a vasoconstrictor, such as an alpha adrenergic receptor agonist, including levonordefrin, epinephrine or norepinephrine in an amount to effect vasoconstriction at the locus and region of administration. The amount, for example can be at or about 10 µg to 5 mg, 50 µg to 1 mg, 50 µg to 500 µg, 50 µg to 250 µg, 100 µg to 500 µg, 200 µg to 400 µg, 1 mg to 5 mg or 2 mg to 4 mg of, for example, epinephrine or other vasoconstrictor. Each of the additional pharmacologically effective agents can be mixed in any combination in one container or can be provided in a single containers. They can be provided as liquids or solids as exemplified and described above for cathepsin L.

In exemplary embodiments, the combinations, can contain the AMDE and activator, and the container can contain comprises at least two pharmacologically effect agents, where the pharmacologic agents are provided as separate compositions separated from each other or are provided in the same container in the same composition. For example, the additional container can contain one or more of a hyaluronidase, lidocaine and epinephrine. The additional container can be in the form of a syringe with or without a needle. The total volume in the additional container(s) is or is about 1 -100 ml, 1 -50 ml, 10- 50 ml, 10-30 ml, 1-20 ml, or 1-10 ml.

In exemplary embodiments, the combination includes cathepsin L and the hyaluronidase, such as rHuPH20. The can be provided as separate compositions or are in a single composition in one container. The combination can include an acidic buffer that activates the cathepsin L. The buffer can be provided in a separate container or mixed with one or both of the cathepsin L and hyaluronidase.

Also provided are pharmaceutical compositions the contain an amount of cathepsin L effective for treatment of an ECM-mediated disease or condition upon administration simultaneously or sequentially with an acidic buffer, where the composition is formulated for single dosage administration; and the buffer has a pH that activates cathepsin L. The amount of cathepsin L is effective for the particular disease or

condition, and for example, is or is about 10 µg to 100 mg, 50 µg to 75 mg, 100 µg to 50 mg, 250 µg to 25 mg, 500 µg to 10 mg, 1 mg to 5 mg, or 2 mg to 4 mg. The composition can further contain one or more of lidocaine, epinephrine and a hyaluronidase.

- 5 The containers and/or combinations and compositions can be packaged as kits. The kits contain the contains and/or combinations and optionally additional reagents for use in the methods provided herein, devices for administration, such vials, tubes, syringes and needles, provided herein and/or instructions for such use.

DETAILED DESCRIPTION

- 10 **Outline**
- A. Definitions**
- B. The Extracellular Matrix**
1. **Components of the ECM**
- a. Collagens
- 15 b. Elastin
- c. Fibronectin
- d. Glycosaminoglycans (GAGs)
- i. Proteoglycans
- ii. Hyaluronic Acid
- 20 2. **Histology of the Skin**
- a. The Epidermis
- b. The Dermis
- c. The Hypodermis
3. **Diseases of the ECM**
- 25 **C. Matrix-Degrading Enzymes**
1. **Enzyme Activation**
- a. Serine Proteases
- b. Cysteine Proteases
- i. Cathepsins
- 30 Cathepsin L
- ii. Calpain
- c. Aspartic Proteases
- d. Metalloproteases
- e. Heparanase
- 35 **D. Activatable Matrix-Degrading Enzymes (AMDE)**
1. **Activating Conditions and Methods for Activation of**
- Activatable Matrix-Degrading Enzymes**
- a. Activating Condition – Acidic pH
- b. Activating Condition – Metal Cation Concentration
- 40 2. **Combinations of Matrix-Degrading Enzymes and Activator**
- E. Methods of Producing Nucleic Acids Encoding Matrix-Degrading**
- Enzymes, and Polypeptides Thereof**
1. **Vectors and Cells**
2. **Expression**
- 45 a. Prokaryotic Cells
- b. Yeast Cells

- c. Insect Cells
 - d. Mammalian Cells
 - e. Plants
 - 3. Purification Techniques
- 5 F. Preparation, Formulation and Administration of Activatable Matrix-Degrading Enzymes
 - 1. Injectables, solutions and emulsions
 - Lyophilized Powders
 - 2. Topical Administration
 - 10 3. Compositions for other routes of administration
 - 4. Combination Therapies
 - Hyaluronidases
- G. Packaging and Articles of Manufacture of Activatable Matrix-Degrading Enzymes
 - 15 1. Single Chamber Apparatus
 - 2. Dual Chamber Apparatus
 - 3. Kits
- H. Methods of Assessing Activity of Matrix-Degrading Enzymes
 - 1. Methods of Assessing Enzymatic Activity
 - 20 2. Methods of Assessing ECM Degradation
 - a. In vitro assays
 - b. In vivo assays
 - c. Non-human animal models
- 25 I. Exemplary Methods of Treating Diseases or Defects of ECM Collagen-Mediated Diseases or Conditions
 - a. Cellulite
 - b. Dupuytren's Disease
 - c. Peyronie's Disease
 - d. Ledderhose Fibrosis
 - 30 e. Stiff Joints
 - f. Existing Scars
 - i. Surgical Adhesions
 - ii. Keloids
 - iii. Hypertrophic scars
 - 35 iv. Depressed Scars
 - g. Scleroderma
 - h. Lymphedema
 - i. Collagenous colitis
- J. Examples

40 A. DEFINITIONS

Unless defined otherwise, all technical and scientific terms used herein have the same meaning as is commonly understood by one of skill in the art to which the invention(s) belong. All patents, patent applications, published applications and publications, Genbank sequences, databases, websites and other published materials

45 referred to throughout the entire disclosure herein, unless noted otherwise, are incorporated by reference in their entirety. In the event that there are a plurality of

definitions for terms herein, those in this section prevail. Where reference is made to a URL or other such identifier or address, it is understood that such identifiers can change and particular information on the internet can come and go, but equivalent information can be found by searching the internet. Reference thereto evidences the availability and public dissemination of such information.

As used herein, the extracellular matrix (ECM) refers to a complex meshwork structure that surrounds and provides structural support to cells of specialized tissues and organs. The ECM is made up of structural proteins such as collagen and elastin; specialized proteins such as fibronectin; and proteoglycans. The exact biochemical composition varies from tissue to tissue. In the skin, for example, it is the dermal layer that contains the ECM. Reference to the "interstitium" is used interchangeably herein to refer to the ECM.

As used herein, components of the ECM refers to any material produced by cells of connective tissue and secreted into the interstitium. For purposes herein, references to ECM components refers to proteins and glycoproteins, and not to other cellular components or other components of the ECM. Exemplary ECM components include, but are not limited to, collagen, fibronectin, elastin and proteoglycans.

As used herein, a matrix degrading enzyme refers to any enzyme that degrades one or more components of the ECM. Matrix-degrading enzymes include protease, which are enzymes that catalyze the hydrolysis of covalent peptidic bonds. Matrix-degrading enzymes include any known to one of skill in the art, such as any described herein (see, *e.g.*, Table 3), allelic or species variants or other variants thereof.

As used herein, a modified matrix-degrading enzyme (or variant of a matrix-degrading enzyme) refers to an enzyme that has one or more modifications in primary sequence compared to a wild-type enzyme. The one or more mutations can be one or more amino acid replacements (substitutions), insertions, deletions and any combination thereof. A modified enzyme includes those with 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 19, 20 or more modified positions. A modified enzyme retains the activity of a wild-type enzyme, but may have altered substrate specificity or stability. A modified enzyme typically has 60%, 70%, 80%, 85%, 90%, 91%, 92%, 93%, 94%, 95%, 96%, 97%, 98%, 99% or more sequence identity to a corresponding sequence of amino acids of a wildtype enzyme.

As used herein, a lysosomal enzyme refers to enzymes whose degradative function is optimal at acidic pH. By virtue of the requirement of low pH, such enzymes generally are present in the lysosomes of cells. Lysosomal enzymes include, but are not limited to, cathepsin S, K, L B, C, H, F, O, R, V, D and E.

5 Exemplary of lysosomal enzymes include precursor forms set forth in any of SEQ ID NOS:56, 59, 62, 64, 179, 67, 70, 73, 76, 182, 185, 188, 79, 194, 89, 92 and 95 and mature forms thereof set forth in SEQ ID NOS:57, 60, 1, 65, 180, 68, 71, 74, 77, 183, 186, 189, 80, 195, 90, 93 and 96 or allelic variants or species variants or other variants thereof. Other lysosomal enzymes include, but are not limited to, lysosomal
10 acid lipase, gastric lipase, gastric lipase, lysosomal phospholipase and bile salt-activated lipase (nucleic acid sequences encoding amino acids sequences, including mature forms thereof, are set forth in any of SEQ ID NOS: 196-207).

As used herein, a "zymogen" refers to an enzyme that is an inactive precursor of and requires some change, such as proteolysis of the polypeptide, to become active.
15 Some zymogens also require the addition of co-factors such as, but not limited to, pH, ionic strength, metal ions or temperature for activation. Zymogens include the proenzyme form of enzymes. Hence, zymogens, generally, are inactive and can be converted to a mature polypeptide by catalytic or autocatalytic cleavage of the proregion from the zymogen in the presence or absence of additional cofactors.

20 As used herein, a prosegment or proregion refers to a region or a segment that is cleaved to produce a mature protein. This can include segments that function to suppress the enzymatic activity by masking the catalytic machinery. A proregion is a sequence of amino acids positioned at the amino terminus of a mature polypeptide and can be as little as a few amino acids or can be a multidomain structure.

25 As used herein, an activation sequence refers to a sequence of amino acids in a zymogen that are the site required for activation cleavage or maturation cleavage to form an active protease. Cleavage of an activation sequence can be catalyzed autocatalytically or by activating partners.

Activation cleavage is a type of maturation cleavage in which a
30 conformational change required for activity occurs. Activation can result in production of multi-chain forms of the proteases, for example, two-chain forms. In some instances, single chain forms of the protease can exhibit proteolytic activity as a single chain.

As used herein, a cofactor refers to a condition or factor that is required for activity of an enzyme. Cofactors includes anything required for enzymatic activity. Examples of cofactors include, but are not limited to, pH, ionic strength, metal ions or temperature. With reference to *in vivo* administration of an enzyme, cofactors include
5 endogenously present factors and exogenously provided factors.

As used herein, an activating condition refers to any physical condition or combination of conditions that is required for an enzyme's activity. For purposes herein, an activating condition for an activatable matrix-degrading enzyme (AMDE) includes those that are not present at the site of administration, for example, not
10 present in the extracellular matrix, in amounts (i.e. quantity, degree, level or other physical measure) required for activation of the enzyme. Exemplary of activating conditions include, but are not limited to, pH, metal ions, temperature and ionic strength. For example, in the case of lysosomal matrix degrading-enzymes that are active at conditions of low pH but inactive at neutral pH, exposure of the inactive
15 enzyme to an activating condition that is acidic pH results in activation of the enzyme. By virtue of the fact that the activating condition is not present at the site of administration of the enzyme, but must be added exogenously, the activating condition will dissipate and/or be neutralized over time, such that the activating condition is no longer present to activate the enzyme. Hence, the enzyme will be
20 active for a limited or predetermined time upon administration.

As used herein, an activator refers to any composition that provides an activating condition for an activatable matrix-degrading enzyme. Examples of activators include, but are not limited to an acidic pH buffer, a cold buffer, or a calcium buffer.

25 As used herein, an "activatable matrix-degrading enzyme (AMDE)" refers to a matrix degrading enzyme that requires an activating condition in order to be active. For purposes herein, for example, an AMDE is substantially inactive in the ECM unless exposed to activators before, with or subsequent to administration of the AMDE, thereby providing an activating condition for the enzyme. Hence, activation
30 of a activatable enzymes is controlled by exogenous conditions so that the period of time at an *in vivo* locus or site during which the enzyme is active can be predetermined and/or controlled as a result of the dissipation and/or neutralization of the activation condition (i.e. temporally controllable or time-controlled). Thus, by virtue of exposure to an activating condition, the enzymes are active for a limited time

and/or to a limited extent in the ECM (i.e. are conditionally active). The extent and time of activation can be controlled by selection of activator or activating conditions, and can be for a predetermined time. For example, a lysosomal enzyme, such as a cathepsin L, is activatable in that it can be activated by exposure to the activating
 5 condition of pH, such as provided by an acidic buffered solution. Upon administration of the activated enzyme to the neutral pH environment of the ECM, the pH environment will return to neutrality in a time period that can be predetermined based upon the buffering capacity of the acidic buffer, such that the enzyme will become inactive.

10 As used herein, “amount of an activator” refers to the quantity, degree or level of an activator. The amount of an activator can be a concentration or absolute amount, or a particular temperature or pH. For purposes herein, the amount of an activator is typically an amount that is sufficient to result in the conditional activation of an enzyme. The amount can be adjusted to alter the duration of activation so that
 15 activation can be for a limited or predetermined time.

As used herein, a “therapeutically effective amount” or a “therapeutically effective dose” refers to to an agent, compound, material, or composition containing a compound that is at least sufficient to produce a therapeutic effect.

20 As used herein, an enzyme that is active for a limited time or for limited duration refers to an active enzyme having activity that dissipates and/or is neutralized over time. Thus, by virtue of the absence of an activation condition, the enzyme is rendered inactive.

25 As used herein, predetermined time means a limited that that is known before and can be controlled. The dissipation and/or neutralization of an activation condition required for an enzyme’s activity can be titrated so that the time required for an active enzyme to become inactive is known. For example, an acid activated enzyme that is administered in acid medium and exposed to an *in vivo* environment having a neutral pH (i.e. the ECM) will, over time, be exposed to a gradually increased pH such that the enzyme will remain active for only a limited time. The rate of pH increase can be
 30 controlled, for example, by varying buffering capacity of the acidic buffer such that the period of time required for an active enzyme to become inactive can be predetermined. For purposes herein, an enzyme can be active for a predetermined time that is or is about 1 minutes, 2 minutes, 3 minutes, 4 minutes, 5 minutes, 6 minutes, 7

minutes, 8 minutes, 9 minutes, 10 minutes, 15 minutes, 20 minutes, 30 minutes, 1 hour, 2 hour, 3 hour, or 4 hour.

As used herein, substantially inactive at neutral pH means that the enzyme, when at neutral pH, exhibits less than 10% of the activity of the enzyme at its pH optima under similar conditions (except for the pH differences), i.e. assay, buffer, ionic strength.

As used herein, substantially active at pH 5.5 means that the enzyme, when at pH 5.5, exhibits greater than 10%, for example, 20%, 30%, 40%, 50%, 60%, 70%, 80%, 90%, 95%, 96%, 97%, 98%, 99% or 100% of the activity of the enzyme at its pH optima under similar conditions (except for the pH differences), i.e. assay, buffer, ionic strength.

As used herein, sub-epidermal administration refers to any administration that results in delivery of the enzyme under the outer-most layer of the skin. Sub-epidermal administration does not include topical application onto the outer layer of the skin. Examples of sub-epidermal administrations include, but are not limited to, subcutaneous, intramuscular intralesional and intradermal routes of administration.

As used herein, substrate refers to a molecule that is cleaved by an enzyme. Minimally, a target substrate includes a peptide containing the cleavage sequence recognized by the protease, and therefore can be two, three, four, five, six or more residues in length. A substrate also includes a full-length protein, allelic variant, isoform or any portion thereof that is cleaved by an enzyme. Additionally, a substrate includes a peptide or protein containing an additional moiety that does not affect cleavage of the substrate by the enzyme. For example, a substrate can include a four amino acid peptide, or a full-length protein chemically linked to a fluorogenic moiety.

As used herein, cleavage refers to the breaking of peptide bonds or other bonds by an enzyme that results in one or more degradation products.

As used herein, activity refers to a functional activity or activities of a polypeptide or portion thereof associated with a full-length (complete) protein. Functional activities include, but are not limited to, biological activity, catalytic or enzymatic activity, antigenicity (ability to bind or compete with a polypeptide for binding to an anti-polypeptide antibody), immunogenicity, ability to form multimers, and the ability to specifically bind to a receptor or ligand for the polypeptide.

As used herein, enzymatic activity or catalytic activity or cleavage activity refers to the activity of a protease as assessed in *in vitro* proteolytic assays that detect proteolysis of a selected substrate.

As used herein, an active enzyme refers to an enzyme that exhibits enzymatic activity. For purposes herein, active enzymes are those that cleave any one or more components of the ECM, such as collagen. Active enzymes include those in single-chain or two-chain form.

As used herein, an inactive enzyme refers to an enzyme that exhibits substantially no activity (i.e. catalytic activity or cleavage activity), such as less than 10% of the maximum activity of the enzyme. The enzyme can be inactive by virtue of its conformation, the absence of an activating conditions required for its activity, or the presence of an inhibitor or any other condition or factor or form that renders the enzyme substantially inactive.

As used herein, a human protein is one encoded by a nucleic acid molecule, such as DNA, present in the genome of a human, including all allelic variants and conservative variations thereof. A variant or modification of a protein is a human protein if the modification is based on the wildtype or prominent sequence of a human protein.

As used herein, hyaluronidase refers to an enzyme that degrades hyaluronic acid. Hyaluronidases include bacterial hyaluronidases (EC 4.2.99.1), hyaluronidases from leeches, other parasites, and crustaceans (EC 3.2.1.36), and mammalian-type hyaluronidases (EC 3.2.1.35). Hyaluronidases also include any of non-human origin including, but not limited to, murine, canine, feline, leporine, avian, bovine, ovine, porcine, equine, piscine, ranine, bacterial, and any from leeches, other parasites, and crustaceans. Exemplary non-human hyaluronidases include any set forth in any of SEQ ID NOS: 237- 260. Exemplary human hyaluronidases include HYAL1 (SEQ ID NO:262), HYAL2 (SEQ ID NO:263), HYAL3 (SEQ ID NO:264), HYAL4 (SEQ ID NO:265), and PH20 (SEQ ID NO:232). Also included amongst hyaluronidases are soluble human PH20 and soluble rHuPH20.

Reference to hyaluronidases includes precursor hyaluronidase polypeptides and mature hyaluronidase polypeptides (such as those in which a signal sequence has been removed), truncated forms thereof that have activity, and includes allelic variants and species variants, variants encoded by splice variants, and other variants, including polypeptides that have at least 40%, 45%, 50%, 55%, 65%, 70%, 75%,

80%, 85%, 90%, 95%, 96%, 97%, 98%, 99% or more sequence identity to the precursor polypeptide set forth any of SEQ ID NO: 232 or the mature form thereof.

Hyaluronidases also include those that contain chemical or posttranslational modifications and those that do not contain chemical or posttranslational

5 modifications. Such modifications include, but are not limited to, pegylation, albumination, glycosylation, farnesylation, carboxylation, hydroxylation, phosphorylation, and other polypeptide modifications known in the art.

As used herein, soluble human PH20 or sHuPH20 include mature polypeptides lacking all or a portion of the glycosylphosphatidylinositol (GPI)

10 attachment site at the C-terminus such that upon expression, the polypeptides are soluble. Exemplary sHuPH20 polypeptides include mature polypeptides having an amino acid sequence set forth in any one of SEQ ID NOS:226-231. The precursor polypeptides for such exemplary sHuPH20 polypeptides include an amino acid signal sequence. Exemplary of a precursor is set forth in SEQ ID NOS:225, which contains
15 a 35 amino acid signal sequence at amino acid positions 1-35. Soluble HuPH20 polypeptides can be degraded during or after the production and purification methods described herein.

As used herein, soluble rHuPH20 refers to a soluble form of human PH20 that is recombinantly expressed in Chinese Hamster Ovary (CHO) cells. Soluble rHuPH20
20 is encoded by nucleic acid that includes the signal sequence and is set forth in SEQ ID NO: DNA SEQUENCE. Also included are DNA molecules that are allelic variants thereof and other soluble variants. The nucleic acid encoding soluble rHuPH20 is expressed in CHO cells which secrete the mature polypeptide. As produced in the culture medium there is heterogeneity at the C-terminus so that the product includes a
25 mixture of species of SEQ ID NOS. 226-231. Corresponding allelic variants and other variants also are included. Other variants can have 60%, 70%, 80%, 85%, 90%, 91%, 92%, 93%, 94%, 95%, 96%, 97%, 98%, 99% or more sequence identity with any of SEQ ID NOS. 226-231 as long they retain a hyaluronidase activity and are soluble.

30 As used herein, hyaluronidase activity refers to any activity exhibited by a hyaluronidase polypeptide. Such activities can be tested *in vitro* and/or *in vivo* and include, but are not limited to, enzymatic activity, such as to effect cleavage of hyaluronic acid, ability to act as a dispersing or spreading agent and antigenicity. Exemplary assays include the microturbidity assay (see e.g. Example 16) that

measures cleavage of hyaluronic acid by hyaluronidase indirectly by detecting the insoluble precipitate formed when the uncleaved hyaluronic acid binds with serum albumin.

As used herein, the residues of naturally occurring α -amino acids are the
5 residues of those 20 α -amino acids found in nature which are incorporated into protein by the specific recognition of the charged tRNA molecule with its cognate mRNA codon in humans.

As used herein, nucleic acids include DNA, RNA and analogs thereof, including peptide nucleic acids (PNA) and mixtures thereof. Nucleic acids can be
10 single or double-stranded. When referring to probes or primers, which are optionally labeled, such as with a detectable label, such as a fluorescent or radiolabel, single-stranded molecules are contemplated. Such molecules are typically of a length such that their target is statistically unique or of low copy number (typically less than 5, generally less than 3) for probing or priming a library. Generally a probe or primer
15 contains at least 14, 16 or 30 contiguous nucleotides of sequence complementary to or identical to a gene of interest. Probes and primers can be 10, 20, 30, 50, 100 or more nucleic acids long.

As used herein, a peptide refers to a polypeptide that is from 2 to 40 amino acids in length.

20 As used herein, the amino acids which occur in the various sequences of amino acids provided herein are identified according to their known, three-letter or one-letter abbreviations (Table 1). The nucleotides which occur in the various nucleic acid fragments are designated with the standard single-letter designations used routinely in the art.

25 As used herein, an "amino acid" is an organic compound containing an amino group and a carboxylic acid group. A polypeptide contains two or more amino acids. For purposes herein, amino acids include the twenty naturally-occurring amino acids, non-natural amino acids and amino acid analogs (i.e., amino acids wherein the α -carbon has a side chain).

30 As used herein, "amino acid residue" refers to an amino acid formed upon chemical digestion (hydrolysis) of a polypeptide at its peptide linkages. The amino acid residues described herein are presumed to be in the "L" isomeric form. Residues in the "D" isomeric form, which are so designated, can be substituted for any L-amino acid residue as long as the desired functional property is retained by the polypeptide.

NH₂ refers to the free amino group present at the amino terminus of a polypeptide.
 COOH refers to the free carboxy group present at the carboxyl terminus of a polypeptide. In keeping with standard polypeptide nomenclature described in *J. Biol. Chem.*, 243: 3552-3559 (1969), and adopted 37 C.F.R. §§ 1.821-1.822, abbreviations
 5 for amino acid residues are shown in Table 1:

Table 1 – Table of Correspondence

SYMBOL		
1-Letter	3-Letter	AMINO ACID
Y	Tyr	Tyrosine
G	Gly	Glycine
F	Phe	Phenylalanine
M	Met	Methionine
A	Ala	Alanine
S	Ser	Serine
I	Ile	Isoleucine
L	Leu	Leucine
T	Thr	Threonine
V	Val	Valine
P	Pro	proline
K	Lys	Lysine
H	His	Histidine
Q	Gln	Glutamine
E	Glu	glutamic acid
Z	Glx	Glu and/or Gln
W	Trp	Tryptophan
R	Arg	Arginine
D	Asp	aspartic acid
N	Asn	asparagines
B	Asx	Asn and/or Asp
C	Cys	Cysteine
X	Xaa	Unknown or other

It should be noted that all amino acid residue sequences represented herein by formulae have a left to right orientation in the conventional direction of amino-
 10 terminus to carboxyl-terminus. In addition, the phrase “amino acid residue” is broadly defined to include the amino acids listed in the Table of Correspondence (Table 1) and modified and unusual amino acids, such as those referred to in 37 C.F.R. §§ 1.821-1.822, and incorporated herein by reference. Furthermore, it should
 be noted that a dash at the beginning or end of an amino acid residue sequence
 15 indicates a peptide bond to a further sequence of one or more amino acid residues, to an amino-terminal group such as NH₂ or to a carboxyl-terminal group such as COOH.

As used herein, "naturally occurring amino acids" refer to the 20 L-amino acids that occur in polypeptides.

As used herein, "non-natural amino acid" refers to an organic compound that has a structure similar to a natural amino acid but has been modified structurally to mimic the structure and reactivity of a natural amino acid. Non-naturally occurring amino acids thus include, for example, amino acids or analogs of amino acids other than the 20 naturally-occurring amino acids and include, but are not limited to, the D-isostereomers of amino acids. Exemplary non-natural amino acids are described herein and are known to those of skill in the art.

As used herein, a DNA construct is a single or double stranded, linear or circular DNA molecule that contains segments of DNA combined and juxtaposed in a manner not found in nature. DNA constructs exist as a result of human manipulation, and include clones and other copies of manipulated molecules.

As used herein, a DNA segment is a portion of a larger DNA molecule having specified attributes. For example, a DNA segment encoding a specified polypeptide is a portion of a longer DNA molecule, such as a plasmid or plasmid fragment, which, when read from the 5' to 3' direction, encodes the sequence of amino acids of the specified polypeptide.

As used herein, the term polynucleotide means a single- or double-stranded polymer of deoxyribonucleotides or ribonucleotide bases read from the 5' to the 3' end. Polynucleotides include RNA and DNA, and can be isolated from natural sources, synthesized *in vitro*, or prepared from a combination of natural and synthetic molecules. The length of a polynucleotide molecule is given herein in terms of nucleotides (abbreviated "nt") or base pairs (abbreviated "bp"). The term nucleotides is used for single- and double-stranded molecules where the context permits. When the term is applied to double-stranded molecules it is used to denote overall length and will be understood to be equivalent to the term base pairs. It will be recognized by those skilled in the art that the two strands of a double-stranded polynucleotide can differ slightly in length and that the ends thereof can be staggered; thus all nucleotides within a double-stranded polynucleotide molecule can not be paired. Such unpaired ends will, in general, not exceed 20 nucleotides in length.

As used herein, "similarity" between two proteins or nucleic acids refers to the relatedness between the sequence of amino acids of the proteins or the nucleotide sequences of the nucleic acids. Similarity can be based on the degree of identity

and/or homology of sequences of residues and the residues contained therein.

Methods for assessing the degree of similarity between proteins or nucleic acids are known to those of skill in the art. For example, in one method of assessing sequence similarity, two amino acid or nucleotide sequences are aligned in a manner that yields a maximal level of identity between the sequences. "Identity" refers to the extent to which the amino acid or nucleotide sequences are invariant. Alignment of amino acid sequences, and to some extent nucleotide sequences, also can take into account conservative differences and/or frequent substitutions in amino acids (or nucleotides). Conservative differences are those that preserve the physico-chemical properties of the residues involved. Alignments can be global (alignment of the compared sequences over the entire length of the sequences and including all residues) or local (the alignment of a portion of the sequences that includes only the most similar region or regions).

"Identity" per se has an art-recognized meaning and can be calculated using published techniques. (See, e.g.: *Computational Molecular Biology*, Lesk, A.M., ed., Oxford University Press, New York, 1988; *Biocomputing: Informatics and Genome Projects*, Smith, D.W., ed., Academic Press, New York, 1993; *Computer Analysis of Sequence Data*, Part I, Griffin, A.M., and Griffin, H.G., eds., Humana Press, New Jersey, 1994; *Sequence Analysis in Molecular Biology*, von Heinje, G., Academic Press, 1987; and *Sequence Analysis Primer*, Gribskov, M. and Devereux, J., eds., M Stockton Press, New York, 1991). While there exists a number of methods to measure identity between two polynucleotide or polypeptides, the term "identity" is well known to skilled artisans (Carillo, H. & Lipton, D., *SIAM J Applied Math* 48:1073 (1988)).

As used herein, homologous (with respect to nucleic acid and/or amino acid sequences) means about greater than or equal to 25% sequence homology, typically greater than or equal to 25%, 40%, 50%, 60%, 70%, 80%, 85%, 90% or 95% sequence homology; the precise percentage can be specified if necessary. For purposes herein the terms "homology" and "identity" are often used interchangeably, unless otherwise indicated. In general, for determination of the percentage homology or identity, sequences are aligned so that the highest order match is obtained (see, e.g.: *Computational Molecular Biology*, Lesk, A.M., ed., Oxford University Press, New York, 1988; *Biocomputing: Informatics and Genome Projects*, Smith, D.W., ed., Academic Press, New York, 1993; *Computer Analysis of Sequence Data, Part I*,

Griffin, A.M., and Griffin, H.G., eds., Humana Press, New Jersey, 1994; *Sequence Analysis in Molecular Biology*, von Heinje, G., Academic Press, 1987; and *Sequence Analysis Primer*, Gribskov, M. and Devereux, J., eds., M Stockton Press, New York, 1991; Carillo *et al.* (1988) *SIAM J Applied Math* 48:1073). By sequence homology,
 5 the number of conserved amino acids is determined by standard alignment algorithms programs, and can be used with default gap penalties established by each supplier. Substantially homologous nucleic acid molecules would hybridize typically at moderate stringency or at high stringency all along the length of the nucleic acid of interest. Also contemplated are nucleic acid molecules that contain degenerate
 10 codons in place of codons in the hybridizing nucleic acid molecule.

Whether any two molecules have nucleotide sequences or amino acid sequences that are at least 60%, 70%, 80%, 85%, 90%, 95%, 96%, 97%, 98% or 99% "identical" or "homologous" can be determined using known computer algorithms such as the "FASTA" program, using for example, the default parameters as in
 15 Pearson *et al.* (1988) *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 85:2444 (other programs include the GCG program package (Devereux, J., *et al.*, *Nucleic Acids Research* 12(1):387 (1984)), BLASTP, BLASTN, FASTA (Atschul, S.F., *et al.*, *J Molec Biol* 215:403 (1990)); Guide to Huge Computers, Martin J. Bishop, ed., Academic Press, San Diego, 1994, and Carillo *et al.* (1988) *SIAM J Applied Math* 48:1073). For example,
 20 the BLAST function of the National Center for Biotechnology Information database can be used to determine identity. Other commercially or publicly available programs include, DNASTar "MegAlign" program (Madison, WI) and the University of Wisconsin Genetics Computer Group (UWG) "Gap" program (Madison WI). Percent homology or identity of proteins and/or nucleic acid molecules can be
 25 determined, for example, by comparing sequence information using a GAP computer program (*e.g.*, Needleman *et al.* (1970) *J. Mol. Biol.* 48:443, as revised by Smith and Waterman ((1981) *Adv. Appl. Math.* 2:482). Briefly, the GAP program defines similarity as the number of aligned symbols (*i.e.*, nucleotides or amino acids), which are similar, divided by the total number of symbols in the shorter of the two sequences.
 30 Default parameters for the GAP program can include: (1) a unary comparison matrix (containing a value of 1 for identities and 0 for non-identities) and the weighted comparison matrix of Gribskov *et al.* (1986) *Nucl. Acids Res.* 14:6745, as described by Schwartz and Dayhoff, eds., *ATLAS OF PROTEIN SEQUENCE AND STRUCTURE*, National Biomedical Research Foundation, pp. 353-358 (1979); (2) a penalty of 3.0

for each gap and an additional 0.10 penalty for each symbol in each gap; and (3) no penalty for end gaps.

Therefore, as used herein, the term "identity" or "homology" represents a comparison between a test and a reference polypeptide or polynucleotide. As used
5 herein, the term at least "90% identical to" refers to percent identities from 90 to 99.99 relative to the reference nucleic acid or amino acid sequence of the polypeptide. Identity at a level of 90% or more is indicative of the fact that, assuming for exemplification purposes a test and reference polypeptide length of 100 amino acids are compared. No more than 10% (i.e., 10 out of 100) of the amino acids in the test
10 polypeptide differs from that of the reference polypeptide. Similar comparisons can be made between test and reference polynucleotides. Such differences can be represented as point mutations randomly distributed over the entire length of a polypeptide or they can be clustered in one or more locations of varying length up to the maximum allowable, *e.g.* 10/100 amino acid difference (approximately 90%
15 identity). Differences are defined as nucleic acid or amino acid substitutions, insertions or deletions. At the level of homologies or identities above about 85-90%, the result should be independent of the program and gap parameters set; such high levels of identity can be assessed readily, often by manual alignment without relying on software.

20 As used herein, an aligned sequence refers to the use of homology (similarity and/or identity) to align corresponding positions in a sequence of nucleotides or amino acids. Typically, two or more sequences that are related by 50% or more identity are aligned. An aligned set of sequences refers to 2 or more sequences that are aligned at corresponding positions and can include aligning sequences derived
25 from RNAs, such as ESTs and other cDNAs, aligned with genomic DNA sequence.

As used herein, "primer" refers to a nucleic acid molecule that can act as a point of initiation of template-directed DNA synthesis under appropriate conditions (*e.g.*, in the presence of four different nucleoside triphosphates and a polymerization agent, such as DNA polymerase, RNA polymerase or reverse transcriptase) in an
30 appropriate buffer and at a suitable temperature. It will be appreciated that a certain nucleic acid molecules can serve as a "probe" and as a "primer." A primer, however, has a 3' hydroxyl group for extension. A primer can be used in a variety of methods, including, for example, polymerase chain reaction (PCR), reverse-transcriptase (RT)-PCR, RNA PCR, LCR, multiplex PCR, panhandle PCR, capture PCR, expression

PCR, 3' and 5' RACE, in situ PCR, ligation-mediated PCR and other amplification protocols.

As used herein, "primer pair" refers to a set of primers that includes a 5' (upstream) primer that hybridizes with the 5' end of a sequence to be amplified (e.g. by PCR) and a 3' (downstream) primer that hybridizes with the complement of the 3' end of the sequence to be amplified.

As used herein, "specifically hybridizes" refers to annealing, by complementary base-pairing, of a nucleic acid molecule (e.g. an oligonucleotide) to a target nucleic acid molecule. Those of skill in the art are familiar with *in vitro* and *in vivo* parameters that affect specific hybridization, such as length and composition of the particular molecule. Parameters particularly relevant to *in vitro* hybridization further include annealing and washing temperature, buffer composition and salt concentration. Exemplary washing conditions for removing non-specifically bound nucleic acid molecules at high stringency are 0.1 x SSPE, 0.1% SDS, 65°C, and at medium stringency are 0.2 x SSPE, 0.1% SDS, 50°C. Equivalent stringency conditions are known in the art. The skilled person can readily adjust these parameters to achieve specific hybridization of a nucleic acid molecule to a target nucleic acid molecule appropriate for a particular application. Complementary, when referring to two nucleotide sequences, means that the two sequences of nucleotides are capable of hybridizing, typically with less than 25%, 15% or 5% mismatches between opposed nucleotides. If necessary, the percentage of complementarity will be specified. Typically the two molecules are selected such that they will hybridize under conditions of high stringency.

As used herein, substantially identical to a product means sufficiently similar so that the property of interest is sufficiently unchanged so that the substantially identical product can be used in place of the product.

As used herein, it also is understood that the terms "substantially identical" or "similar" varies with the context as understood by those skilled in the relevant art.

As used herein, an allelic variant or allelic variation references any of two or more alternative forms of a gene occupying the same chromosomal locus. Allelic variation arises naturally through mutation, and can result in phenotypic polymorphism within populations. Gene mutations can be silent (no change in the encoded polypeptide) or can encode polypeptides having altered amino acid sequence. The term "allelic variant" also is used herein to denote a protein encoded by an allelic

variant of a gene. Typically the reference form of the gene encodes a wildtype form and/or predominant form of a polypeptide from a population or single reference member of a species. Typically, allelic variants, which include variants between and among species typically have at least 80%, 90% or greater amino acid identity with a wildtype and/or predominant form from the same species; the degree of identity depends upon the gene and whether comparison is interspecies or intraspecies. Generally, intraspecies allelic variants have at least about 80%, 85%, 90% or 95% identity or greater with a wildtype and/or predominant form, including 96%, 97%, 98%, 99% or greater identity with a wildtype and/or predominant form of a polypeptide. Reference to an allelic variant herein generally refers to variations in proteins among members of the same species.

As used herein, "allele," which is used interchangeably herein with "allelic variant" refers to alternative forms of a gene or portions thereof. Alleles occupy the same locus or position on homologous chromosomes. When a subject has two identical alleles of a gene, the subject is said to be homozygous for that gene or allele. When a subject has two different alleles of a gene, the subject is said to be heterozygous for the gene. Alleles of a specific gene can differ from each other in a single nucleotide or several nucleotides, and can include substitutions, deletions and insertions of nucleotides. An allele of a gene also can be a form of a gene containing a mutation.

As used herein, species variants refer to variants in polypeptides among different species, including different mammalian species, such as mouse and human.

As used herein, a splice variant refers to a variant produced by differential processing of a primary transcript of genomic DNA that results in more than one type of mRNA.

As used herein, modification is in reference to modification of a sequence of amino acids of a polypeptide or a sequence of nucleotides in a nucleic acid molecule and includes deletions, insertions, and replacements of amino acids and nucleotides, respectively. Methods of modifying a polypeptide are routine to those of skill in the art, such as by using recombinant DNA methodologies.

As used herein, the term promoter means a portion of a gene containing DNA sequences that provide for the binding of RNA polymerase and initiation of transcription. Promoter sequences are commonly, but not always, found in the 5' non-coding region of genes.

As used herein, isolated or purified polypeptide or protein or biologically-active portion thereof is substantially free of cellular material or other contaminating proteins from the cell or tissue from which the protein is derived, or substantially free from chemical precursors or other chemicals when chemically synthesized.

5 Preparations can be determined to be substantially free if they appear free of readily detectable impurities as determined by standard methods of analysis, such as thin layer chromatography (TLC), gel electrophoresis and high performance liquid chromatography (HPLC), used by those of skill in the art to assess such purity, or sufficiently pure such that further purification would not detectably alter the physical
10 and chemical properties, such as enzymatic and biological activities, of the substance. Methods for purification of the compounds to produce substantially chemically pure compounds are known to those of skill in the art. A substantially chemically pure compound, however, can be a mixture of stereoisomers. In such instances, further purification might increase the specific activity of the compound.

15 The term substantially free of cellular material includes preparations of proteins in which the protein is separated from cellular components of the cells from which it is isolated or recombinantly-produced. In one embodiment, the term substantially free of cellular material includes preparations of enzyme proteins having less than about 30% (by dry weight) of non-enzyme proteins (also referred to herein as
20 a contaminating protein), generally less than about 20% of non-enzyme proteins or 10% of non-enzyme proteins or less than about 5% of non-enzyme proteins. When the enzyme protein is recombinantly produced, it also is substantially free of culture medium, *i.e.*, culture medium represents less than about or at 20%, 10% or 5% of the volume of the enzyme protein preparation.

25 As used herein, the term substantially free of chemical precursors or other chemicals includes preparations of enzyme proteins in which the protein is separated from chemical precursors or other chemicals that are involved in the synthesis of the protein. The term includes preparations of enzyme proteins having less than about 30% (by dry weight) 20%, 10%, 5% or less of chemical precursors or non-enzyme
30 chemicals or components.

As used herein, synthetic, with reference to, for example, a synthetic nucleic acid molecule or a synthetic gene or a synthetic peptide refers to a nucleic acid molecule or polypeptide molecule that is produced by recombinant methods and/or by chemical synthesis methods.

As used herein, production by recombinant means by using recombinant DNA methods means the use of the well known methods of molecular biology for expressing proteins encoded by cloned DNA.

As used herein, vector (or plasmid) refers to discrete elements that are used to introduce a heterologous nucleic acid into cells for either expression or replication thereof. The vectors typically remain episomal, but can be designed to effect integration of a gene or portion thereof into a chromosome of the genome. Also contemplated are vectors that are artificial chromosomes, such as yeast artificial chromosomes and mammalian artificial chromosomes. Selection and use of such vehicles are well known to those of skill in the art.

As used herein, an expression vector includes vectors capable of expressing DNA that is operatively linked with regulatory sequences, such as promoter regions, that are capable of effecting expression of such DNA fragments. Such additional segments can include promoter and terminator sequences, and optionally can include one or more origins of replication, one or more selectable markers, an enhancer, a polyadenylation signal, and the like. Expression vectors are generally derived from plasmid or viral DNA, or can contain elements of both. Thus, an expression vector refers to a recombinant DNA or RNA construct, such as a plasmid, a phage, recombinant virus or other vector that, upon introduction into an appropriate host cell, results in expression of the cloned DNA. Appropriate expression vectors are well known to those of skill in the art and include those that are replicable in eukaryotic cells and/or prokaryotic cells and those that remain episomal or those which integrate into the host cell genome.

As used herein, vector also includes "virus vectors" or "viral vectors." Viral vectors are engineered viruses that are operatively linked to exogenous genes to transfer (as vehicles or shuttles) the exogenous genes into cells.

As used herein, operably or operatively linked when referring to DNA segments means that the segments are arranged so that they function in concert for their intended purposes, e.g., transcription initiates in the promoter and proceeds through the coding segment to the terminator.

As used herein the term assessing is intended to include quantitative and qualitative determination in the sense of obtaining an absolute value for the activity of a protease, or a domain thereof, present in the sample, and also of obtaining an index, ratio, percentage, visual or other value indicative of the level of the activity.

Assessment can be direct or indirect and the chemical species actually detected need not of course be the proteolysis product itself but can for example be a derivative thereof or some further substance. For example, detection of a cleavage product of a complement protein, such as by SDS-PAGE and protein staining with Coomassie blue.

5 As used herein, biological activity refers to the *in vivo* activities of a compound or physiological responses that result upon *in vivo* administration of a compound, composition or other mixture. Biological activity, thus, encompasses therapeutic effects and pharmaceutical activity of such compounds, compositions and mixtures. Biological activities can be observed in *in vitro* systems designed to test or
10 use such activities. Thus, for purposes herein a biological activity of a protease is its catalytic activity in which a polypeptide is hydrolyzed.

 As used herein equivalent, when referring to two sequences of nucleic acids, means that the two sequences in question encode the same sequence of amino acids or equivalent proteins. When equivalent is used in referring to two proteins or peptides,
15 it means that the two proteins or peptides have substantially the same amino acid sequence with only amino acid substitutions that do not substantially alter the activity or function of the protein or peptide. When equivalent refers to a property, the property does not need to be present to the same extent (*e.g.*, two peptides can exhibit different rates of the same type of enzymatic activity), but the activities are usually
20 substantially the same.

 As used herein, “modulate” and “modulation” or “alter” refer to a change of an activity of a molecule, such as a protein. Exemplary activities include, but are not limited to, biological activities, such as signal transduction. Modulation can include an increase in the activity (*i.e.*, up-regulation or agonist activity) a decrease in activity
25 (*i.e.*, down-regulation or inhibition) or any other alteration in an activity (such as a change in periodicity, frequency, duration, kinetics or other parameter). Modulation can be context dependent and typically modulation is compared to a designated state, for example, the wildtype protein, the protein in a constitutive state, or the protein as expressed in a designated cell type or condition.

30 As used herein, a composition refers to any mixture. It can be a solution, suspension, liquid, powder, paste, aqueous, non-aqueous or any combination thereof.

 As used herein, a combination refers to any association between or among two or more items. The combination can be two or more separate items, such as two compositions or two collections, can be a mixture thereof, such as a single mixture of

the two or more items, or any variation thereof. The elements of a combination are generally functionally associated or related.

As used herein, a kit is a packaged combination that optionally includes other elements, such as additional reagents and instructions for use of the combination or
5 elements thereof.

As used herein, "disease or disorder" refers to a pathological condition in an organism resulting from cause or condition including, but not limited to, infections, acquired conditions, genetic conditions, and characterized by identifiable symptoms. Diseases and disorders of interest herein are those involving components of the ECM.

10 As used herein, an ECM-mediated disease or condition is one where any one or more ECM components is involved in the pathology or etiology. For purposes herein, an ECM-mediated disease or conditions includes those that are caused by an increased deposition or accumulation of one or more ECM component. Such conditions include, but are not limited to, cellulite, Duputyren's syndrome, Peyronie's
15 disease, frozen shoulders, existing scars such as keloids, scleroderma and lymphedema.

As used herein, "treating" a subject with a disease or condition means that the subject's symptoms are partially or totally alleviated, or remain static following treatment. Hence treatment encompasses prophylaxis, therapy and/or cure.

20 Prophylaxis refers to prevention of a potential disease and/or a prevention of worsening of symptoms or progression of a disease. Treatment also encompasses any pharmaceutical use of a modified interferon and compositions provided herein.

As used herein, a pharmaceutically effective agent, includes any therapeutic agent or bioactive agents, including, but not limited to, for example, anesthetics,
25 vasoconstrictors, dispersing agents, conventional therapeutic drugs, including small molecule drugs and therapeutic proteins.

As used herein, treatment means any manner in which the symptoms of a condition, disorder or disease or other indication, are ameliorated or otherwise beneficially altered.

30 As used herein therapeutic effect means an effect resulting from treatment of a subject that alters, typically improves or ameliorates the symptoms of a disease or condition or that cures a disease or condition. A therapeutically effective amount refers to the amount of a composition, molecule or compound which results in a therapeutic effect following administration to a subject.

As used herein, the term "subject" refers to an animal, including a mammal, such as a human being.

As used herein, a patient refers to a human subject.

As used herein, amelioration of the symptoms of a particular disease or disorder by a treatment, such as by administration of a pharmaceutical composition or other therapeutic, refers to any lessening, whether permanent or temporary, lasting or transient, of the symptoms that can be attributed to or associated with administration of the composition or therapeutic.

As used herein, prevention or prophylaxis refers to methods in which the risk of developing disease or condition is reduced.

As used herein, an effective amount is the quantity of a therapeutic agent necessary for preventing, curing, ameliorating, arresting or partially arresting a symptom of a disease or disorder.

As used herein, unit dose form refers to physically discrete units suitable for human and animal subjects and packaged individually as is known in the art.

As used herein, a single dosage formulation refers to a formulation for direct administration.

As used herein, an "article of manufacture" is a product that is made and sold. As used throughout this application, the term is intended to encompass activatable matrix degrading enzymes contained in articles of packaging.

As used herein, fluid refers to any composition that can flow. Fluids thus encompass compositions that are in the form of semi-solids, pastes, solutions, aqueous mixtures, gels, lotions, creams and other such compositions.

As used herein, a "kit" refers to a combination of an activatable matrix-degrading enzyme provided herein and another item for a purpose including, but not limited to, activation, administration, diagnosis, and assessment of a biological activity or property. Kits optionally include instructions for use.

As used herein, a cellular extract or lysate refers to a preparation or fraction which is made from a lysed or disrupted cell.

As used herein, animal includes any animal, such as, but are not limited to primates including humans, gorillas and monkeys; rodents, such as mice and rats; fowl, such as chickens; ruminants, such as goats, cows, deer, sheep; ovine, such as pigs and other animals. Non-human animals exclude humans as the contemplated

animal. The enzymes provided herein are from any source, animal, plant, prokaryotic and fungal. Most enzymes are of animal origin, including mammalian origin.

As used herein, a control refers to a sample that is substantially identical to the test sample, except that it is not treated with a test parameter, or, if it is a plasma sample, it can be from a normal volunteer not affected with the condition of interest. A control also can be an internal control.

As used herein, the singular forms "a," "an" and "the" include plural referents unless the context clearly dictates otherwise. Thus, for example, reference to a compound, comprising "an extracellular domain" includes compounds with one or a plurality of extracellular domains.

As used herein, ranges and amounts can be expressed as "about" a particular value or range. About also includes the exact amount. Hence "about 5 bases" means "about 5 bases" and also "5 bases."

As used herein, "optional" or "optionally" means that the subsequently described event or circumstance does or does not occur, and that the description includes instances where said event or circumstance occurs and instances where it does not. For example, an optionally substituted group means that the group is unsubstituted or is substituted.

As used herein, the abbreviations for any protective groups, amino acids and other compounds, are, unless indicated otherwise, in accord with their common usage, recognized abbreviations, or the IUPAC-IUB Commission on Biochemical Nomenclature (see, (1972) Biochem. 11:1726).

B. THE EXTRACELLULAR MATRIX

Provided herein are activatable matrix-degrading enzymes (AMDE) that degrade one or more protein components of the extracellular matrix (ECM) in a time controlled manner. By virtue of such targeting and the temporal *in vivo* activation, diseases and/or conditions of the ECM can be treated. The activatable matrix-degrading enzyme can degrade any component of the ECM; enzyme selection can depend upon the targeted component and/or the particular disease or condition to be treated.

The ECM makes up the connective tissue or interstitium that surrounds the spaces outside cells and the vascular and lymphatic system, thereby providing mechanical and structural support with and between different tissues. The complex and dynamic microenvironment of the ECM represents a structural and signaling

system within connective tissues, such as the skin. Due to the complex nature of the ECM, it can serve diverse functions such as providing support and anchorage for cells, segregating tissues, regulating intercellular communication, and sequestering cellular growth factors. Defects or changes in the organization, or make-up of the

5 ECM can contribute to a number of diseases or conditions. For example, changes in the synthesis, degradation and organization of collagen fibers contribute to lipodystrophy (e.g., cellulite) and lymphedema.

The ECM is composed of fibrous structural proteins, such as collagens, polysaccharides, such as proteoglycans and hyaluronic acid, and adhesion proteins

10 that link components of the matrix to each other and to cells. Some connective tissues, such as tendon and cartilage, are principally made up of the ECM. The ECM making up the connective tissue of the skin, however, also is distributed with fibroblasts, blood vessels and other components. The ECM also serves as the space where water and its dissolved constituents move from the blood plasma to the

15 lymphatics. The interstitial fluid is nearly isosmotic with the cytoplasm and is bicarbonate buffered providing an extracellular environment that is at neutral pH.

1. Components of the ECM

The ECM (also called the interstitial matrix) is a complex three-dimensional dynamic structure that contains numerous structural macromolecules including

20 fibrous proteins such as collagens, elastin and fibronectin, in which glycosaminoglycans (GAGs) form a hydrated gel-like substance. The components of the ECM are produced by resident cells, typically fibroblasts or cells of the fibroblast family, and are secreted via exocytosis where they interact with other components of the ECM. It is the variation in the relative amount and the way in

25 which the components organize and form together that give rise to diverse connective tissues such as bone, skin or cornea (Albert et al., "Cell Junctions, Cell Adhesions and the Extracellular Matrix." *Molecular Biology of the Cell*. New York: Garland Publishers, 1994. Page 972.)

a. Collagens

30 Collagen is the major structural constituent of connective tissues, such as the skin, and play a role in the development and maintenance of tissue architecture, tissue strength and cell-cell interactions. Collagens include a family of structurally-related proteins of the ECM that contain one or more domains having the conformation of a collagen triple helix (Van der Rest et al. (1991) FASEB J., 5:2814-2823). Collagens

contain a Gly-X-Y repeating structure, which allows collagen chains to twist into a helical structure. Each collagen molecule contains three chains twisted around each other to form a triple helix, designated $\alpha 1$ - $\alpha 3$. The triple helix structure provides a high mechanical strength to a collagen molecule. There are at least 27 different types of collagens, which differ in amino acid sequence and chain composition. For example, depending on the type of collagen, the three chains forming the triple helix can be the same or different. Collagens can be homotrimeric (*i.e.* all three polypeptide chains of the triple helix are made up of the same collagen) or can be heterotypic (*i.e.* fibrils made of more than one collagen type). Collagens can be divided into several families depending on the structure they form. These include fibrillar collagens (also called interstitial collagens; *e.g.*, Type I, II, III, V and XI) and non-fibrillar collagens such as facit (*e.g.*, Type IX, XII, XIV), short chain (*e.g.*, Type VIII, X), basement membrane (*e.g.*, Type IV), and other collagens (*e.g.*, Type VI, VII, and XIII). Table 2 below sets forth common collagen types and their representative location (Van der Rest et al. (1991) FASEB J., 5:2814-2823); www.collagenlife.com/page_1167323108078.html; www.indstate.edu/thcme/mwking/extracellularmatrix.html).

Among the interstitial collagens, collagen molecules associate to form large fibrils, which have a distinctive banding pattern. The banding pattern results from overlap between adjacent molecules. The strength of collagen fibers is based on a multiplicity of intra- and intermolecular linkages of the collagen fibers that form the dense collagen fiber network of connective tissues. The most common of fibrillar collagens include type I, II and III collagens. Type I collagen is found in most connective tissues such as skin, bone, tendon and cornea, and is made up of two $\alpha 1(I)$ chains and one $\alpha 2(I)$ chain ($[\alpha 1(I)]_2 \alpha 2(I)$). Type II collagen is homotrimeric ($[\alpha 1(II)]_3$) and is predominantly found in the cartilage. Type III collagen also is homotrimeric ($[\alpha 1(III)]_3$) and is predominantly found in the skin and vessels.

Not all collagens form fibril networks. For example, the basement membrane type IV collagen is non-fibrous and has non-helical interruptions in the helix, which acts as a hinge giving the molecule greater flexibility. Thus, type IV collagen forms a sheet made by a meshwork of filaments rather than by linear fibrils.

The most abundant protein of the skin is collagen, which is primarily made up of type I (80-85%) and type III (8-11%) of the total collagen of the skin. Type I collagen associates with Type III collagen to form the major collagen fibers of the

- dermis. The tensile strength of skin is due predominantly to these fibrillar collagen molecules, which assemble into microfibrils in a head-to-tail and staggered side-to-side lateral arrangement. Collagen molecules become cross-linked to adjacent collagen molecules, creating additional strength and stability in collagen fibers. For example, type V collagen also associates with Type I/III collagen fibers, and regulates the fibril diameter. Other collagen types in the skin include, for example, Type IV, Type VI, Type VII, Type XII, Type XIV and Type XVII.

Table 2: Types of Collagens		
Type	Molecule Composition	Representative tissue
Fibrillar Collagens		
I	$[\alpha 1(I)]_2 [\alpha 2(I)]$	Skin, bone, tendon, dentin, ligaments, interstitial tissues
II	$[\alpha 1(II)]_3$	Cartilage, vitreous humor
III	$[\alpha 1(III)]_3$	Skin, muscle, blood vessels; frequently associated with type I
V	$[\alpha 1(V)][\alpha 2(v)][\alpha 3(V)]$	Similar to Type I, also cell cultures, fetal tissues; associates with Type I
Non-fibrillar collagens		
IV	$[\alpha 1(IV)]_2 [\alpha 2 (IV)]$	Basement membrane
VI	$[\alpha 1(VI)][\alpha 2(VI)][\alpha 3(VI)]$	Most interstitial tissues; associates with type I
VII	$[\alpha 1(VII)]_3$	epithelia
VIII	$[\alpha 1(VIII)]_3$	Unknown, some endothelial cells
IX	$[\alpha 1(IX)][\alpha 2(IX)][\alpha 3(IX)]$	Cartilage; associates with Type II
X	$[\alpha 1(X)]_3$	Heterotrophic and mineralizing cartilage
XI	$(\alpha 1(XI))[\alpha 2(XI)][\alpha 3(XI)]$	Cartilage, intervertebral cartilage and bone enamel
XII	$[\alpha 1(XII)]_3$	Ligaments, tendons and tooth enamel; interacts with types I and III

10

b. Elastin

A network of elastic fibers in the ECM provides flexibility to tissues that require resilience to recoil after stretching, such as the skin, arteries and lungs. The main component of elastic fibers is the elastin molecule, which creates cross-links to adjacent elastin molecules. These molecules form a core of elastic fibers and are covered by fibrillin, a large glycoprotein that binds to elastin and is important for the integrity of elastic fibers.

c. Fibronectin

Fibronectin is a glycoprotein that exists as a dimer of two large subunits jointed by a pair of disulfide bonds near the carboxyl termini. Each subunit contains functionally distinct domains specific for other matrix macromolecules and receptors on the surface of cells. For example, distinct domains on fibronectin bind collagen (separate domains for types I, II and III), heparin sulfate, fibrin and cell surface receptors such as integrins. Fibronectin is present in both plasma and tissue. In tissue, fibronectin functions to link together different types of ECM molecules and cells. It also contains an important cell-binding domain made up of the three amino acids, Arg-Gly-ASP (RGD), which is recognized by integrin receptors in the plasma membranes of cells. The binding of fibronectin molecules to integrin receptors on cells leads to the stimulation of signaling pathways that promote cell attachment, migration and differentiation. These characteristics allow fibronectin to play an important role in cell adhesion and to communicate signals between cells and components of the ECM.

d. Glycosaminoglycans (GAGs)

GAGs are unbranched polysaccharide chains made of repeating disaccharide units that are strongly hydrophilic. GAGs are highly negatively charged and therefore attract osmotically active Na^+ , causing large amounts of water to be drawn into their structure to keep the ECM hydrated. GAGs, such as dermatan sulfate, typically contain multiple glycosaminoglycan chains of 70-200 sugars long (formed from repeating disaccharide units) that branch from a linear protein core. This results in GAGs occupying a huge volume relative to their mass and forming gels at very low concentrations. The hydrophilic nature of GAGs causes a swelling pressure, or turgor, which allows the ECM to withstand compression forces.

In the ECM, GAGs are attached to ECM proteins to form proteoglycans or, in the case of Hyaluronic acid (also called hyaluronan), exist as a non-proteoglycan matrix component. Extracellular proteoglycans are large, highly hydrated molecules

that help cushion cells in the ECM. Glycosaminoglycans such as hyaluronan contribute to the “ground substance” by creating a barrier to bulk fluid flow through the interstitial collagenous matrix by way of their viscosity and water of hydration. Proteoglycans and non-proteoglycan GAGs associate to form large polymeric
 5 complexes in the ECM. They associate with each other, and also with fibrous proteins such as collagen.

i. Proteoglycans

There are three main types of GAGs that form proteoglycans of the ECM, including dermatan sulfate and chondroitin sulfate, eparin sulfate and eparin
 10 sulfate. Generally, a proteoglycan is 95% carbohydrate by weight, typically in the form of long unbranched GAG chains. Besides providing hydrated space around cells, proteoglycans also regulate traffic of molecules and cells, bind signaling molecules thereby playing a role in cell activation, and bind other secreted proteins such as proteases and protease inhibitors to regulate the activities of secreted proteins
 15 (Albert et al., “Cell Junctions, Cell Adhesions and the Extracellular Matrix.” *Molecular Biology of the Cell*. New York: Garland Publishers, 1994. pp. 972-978.) For example, the eparin sulfate chains of proteoglycans bind to several different growth factors, including fibroblast growth factors (FGFs), helping them to bind to their specific cell surface receptors.

20 Aggrecan is a proteoglycan, which principally contains chondroitin sulfate and eparin sulfate GAGs, and is typically found in cartilage forming large aggregates with hayaluronan to provide mechanical support. Decorin is another exemplary GAG of connective tissues made up primarily of chondroitin sulfate and dermatan sulfate GAGs. It binds to type I collagen fibrils. Perlecan and betaglycan are other
 25 exemplary proteoglycans of the ECM. Not all proteoglycans are associated with the ECM: for example, serglycin is associated with secretory vesicles where it helps to package and store secretory molecules, and syndecans are found on the cell surface and act as co-receptors (Albert et al., “Cell Junctions, Cell Adhesions and the Extracellular Matrix.” *Molecular Biology of the Cell*. New York: Garland Publishers,
 30 1994. pp. 972-978.)

Heparan sulfate proteoglycans (HSPGs) are ubiquitous macromolecules associated with the cell surface and extracellular matrix (ECM) of a wide range of cells of vertebrate and invertebrate tissues (Wight, T. N., Kinsella, M. G., and Qwarnstromn, E. E. (1992) *Curr. Opin. Cell Biol.*, 4,793-801; Jackson, R. L., Busch,

S. J., and Cardin, A. L. (1991) *Physiol. Rev.*, 71,481-539; Wight, T. N. (1989) *Arteriosclerosis*, 9,1-20; Kjellen, L., and Lindahl, U. (1991) *Annu. Rev. Biochem.*, 60,443-475; and Ruoslahti, E., and Yamaguchi, Y. (1991) *Cell*, 64,867-869). The basic HSPG structure consists of a protein core to which several linear eparin sulfate chains are covalently attached. The polysaccharide chains are typically composed of repeating hexuronic and D-glucosamine disaccharide units that are substituted to a varying extent with N- and O-linked sulfate moieties and N-linked acetyl groups. Studies on the involvement of ECM molecules in cell attachment, growth and differentiation revealed a central role of HSPGs in embryonic morphogenesis, angiogenesis, metastasis, neurite outgrowth and tissue repair. The eparin sulfate (HS) chains, which are unique in their ability to bind a multitude of proteins, ensure that a wide variety of effector molecules cling to the cell surface. HSPGs are also prominent components of blood vessels. In large vessels they are concentrated mostly in the intima and inner media, whereas in capillaries they are found mainly in the subendothelial basement membrane where they support proliferating and migrating endothelial cells and stabilize the structure of the capillary wall. The ability of HSPGs to interact with ECM macromolecules such as collagen, laminin and fibronectin, and with different attachment sites on plasma membranes suggests a key role for this proteoglycan in the self-assembly and insolubility of ECM components, as well as in cell adhesion and locomotion.

ii. Hyaluronic acid

Hyaluronic acid (HA; also called hyaluronan) is a large GAG that attracts water, and when bound to water exists in a viscous, jello-like form. Thus, HA serves as a lubricant, holding together gel-like connective tissues. HA is a polymer of disaccharides (sometimes as many as 25,000 repeats in length) and is composed of repeating units of two modified simple sugars: glucuronic acid and N acetyl glucosamine. HA is part of the ECM of many connective tissues. HA is found in the greatest amount in the skin with almost 50% of the bodies HA found in the skin. The HA provides continuous moisture to the skin by binding up water. Decreased production of HA, such as by age, results in wrinkled and unhealthy skin.

HA, principally through its receptor CD44, also functions to regulate cell behavior during embryonic development and morphogenesis, wound healing, repair and regeneration, inflammation and tumor progression and invasion (Harada et al. (2006) *J. Biol. Chem.*, 8:5597-5607). HA is degraded by hyaluronidases. The

degradation products of HA can be found in increased amounts in damaged or growing tissues, and in a variety of inflammatory conditions. HA fragments promote angiogenesis and can stimulate cytokine production by macrophages and dendritic cells in tissue injury and skin transplant.

5 **2. Histology of the Skin**

The skin is composed of several distinct layers, principally the epidermis and dermis. The epidermis is a specialized epithelium derived from the ectoderm, and beneath this is the dermis, which is a derivative of the mesoderm and is a vascular dense connective tissue. These two layers are firmly adherent to one another and
10 form a region which varies in overall thickness from approximately 0.5 to 4 mm in different areas of the body. Beneath the dermis is a layer of loose connective tissue, which varies from areolar to adipose in character. This is referred to as the hypodermis, but is typically considered not to be part of the skin. The dermis is connected to the hypodermis by connect tissue fibers that pass from one layer to the
15 other.

a. The Epidermis

The epidermis is the skin layer directly above the dermis, and is the surface layer of the skin. The principle function of the epidermis is to act as a protective barrier against water loss, chemical injury and invading pathogens. The epidermis is
20 a thin layer of approximately fifteen cell layers that is about 0.1 to 1.5 millimeters thick composed primarily of keratinocytes (Inlander, Skin, New York, N.Y.: People's Medical Society, 1-7 (1998)). The epidermis is itself divided into several layers (e.g., stratum basale, stratum spinosum, stratum granulosum, stratum lucidum, stratum corneum) based on the state of differentiation of the keratinocytes. Keratinocytes
25 originate in the basal layer from keratinocyte stem cells. As the keratinocytes grow and divide, they undergo gradual differentiation eventually reaching the stratum corneum where they form a layer of enucleated, flattened, highly keratinized cells called squamous cells (also called corneocytes). Besides being made up of corneocytes, the stratum corneum also contains sebum. The sebum is secreted by
30 sebaceous glands, which are usually found in hair-covered areas connected to hair follicles. Sebum is a slightly acid layer that helps to hold the corneocytes together and holds moisture in. This acidity is due to the presence of amphoteric amino acids, lactic acid and fatty acids that make up sebum. Thus, the pH of the skin surface is normally between 5 and 6, typically about 5.5. Sebum acts to waterproof hair and

skin, and keep them from becoming dry, brittle and cracked, and it also inhibits the growth of microorganisms on skin. The term “acid mantle” refers to the presence of the water-soluble substances on most regions of the skin.

b. The Dermis

5 The connective tissue of the skin is called the dermis. The dermis is 1.5 to 4 milliliters thick. In the skin, the dermis contains ECM components; the main protein components are collagen and elastin. The dermis also is home to most of the skin’s structures, including sweat and oil glands that secrete substances through openings in the skin called pores, or comedos, hair follicles, nerve endings, and blood and lymph
10 vessels (Inlander, Skin, New York, N.Y.: People’s Medical Society, 1-7 (1998)).

c. The Hypodermis

 Below the dermis is the hypodermis, which is a fatty layer and is the deepest layer of the skin. It acts both as an insulator for body heat conservation and as a shock absorber for organ protection (Inlander, Skin, New York, N.Y.: People’s
15 Medical Society, 1-7 (1998)). In addition, the hypodermis also stores fat for energy reserves.

3. Diseases of the ECM

 Certain diseases and conditions result from defects or changes in the architecture of the extracellular matrix due to aberrant expression or production of
20 ECM components. For example, in some inflammatory conditions such as occur upon wound healing, cytokines are secreted, which stimulate fibroblasts to secrete ECM components such as collagen. The ECM components accumulate and become locally deposited, resulting in a wide range of fibrotic conditions. Matrix deposition is a frequent feature in many chronic inflammatory diseases and in other diseases and
25 conditions. Included among these are collagen-mediated diseases conditions such as, but not limited to, scars such as keloid and hypertrophic scars, Dupuytren’s syndrome, Peyronie’s disease and lymphedema. Cellulite also is a prominent disease of the ECM that, in addition to increased adipogenicity, is characterized by alterations in the connective tissue matrix resulting in an abnormal fibrous septae network of collagen
30 (Rawlins *et al.* (2006) *Int. J. Cos. Science*, 28:175-190).

 Diseases and conditions of the ECM that are characterized by aberrant expression or overproduction of matrix components, resulting in their accumulation and unwanted deposition, can be treated by the activatable matrix-degrading enzymes provided herein. By virtue of the temporal activation of such enzymes upon *in vivo*

administration, the treatment of such diseases and conditions is regulated to limit the enzymatic degradation of the matrix components. For example, by limiting the duration of action of matrix degradation, unwanted side effects associated with uncontrolled protein degradation is minimized.

5 **C. Matrix-Degrading Enzymes**

Provided herein are compositions, combinations and containers containing activatable matrix-degrading enzymes, and methods of using activatable matrix-degrading enzymes to treat ECM-mediated diseases or conditions. Matrix-degrading enzymes degrade protein components or glycoproteins of the ECM, including, but not
10 limited to, collagen, elastin, fibronectin and proteoglycans. By virtue of their ability to cleave one or more ECM compents, activatable matrix-degrading enzymes provided herein can be used to modify the matrix of tissues, particularly those exhibiting structural defects or changes due to excess of one or more ECM protein or unwanted accumulation of fibrous tissue rich in one or more ECM proteins, such as
15 collagen. Thus, such enzymes are useful in treating diseases or conditions in which ECM proteins are involved.

Among matrix-degrading enzymes are proteases and glycosyl hydrolases. Hence, matrix-degrading enzymes include proteins that are protein-degrading enzymes that recognize sequences of amino acids or a polypeptide substrate within a target
20 protein and also hydrolases that recognize non-peptide bonds such as ester bonds or glycosyl groups. Among proteases are exoproteases of the serine, cysteine, aspartic and metallo-protease families. Upon recognition of the substrate sequence, proteases catalyze the hydrolysis or cleavage of a target protein. Such hydrolysis of a target protein, depending on the location of the peptide bond within the context of the full-
25 length sequence of the target sequence, can inactivate, or in some instances activate, a target.

Several distinct types of catalytic mechanisms are used by proteases (Barret et al. (1994) *Meth. Enzymol.* 244:18-61; Barret et al. (1994) *Meth. Enzymol* 244:461-486; Barret et al. (1994) *Meth. Enzymol.* 248:105-120; Barret et al. (1994) *Meth.*
30 *Enzymol.* 248:183-228). Based on their catalytic mechanism, the proteases that cleave peptide bonds are subdivided into serine-, cysteine-, aspartic-, threonine- and metallo-proteases. Serine peptidases have a serine residue involved in the active center, the aspartic have two aspartic acids in the catalytic center, cysteine -type peptidases have a cysteine residue, threonine-type peptidases have a threonine residue, and metallo-

peptidases use a metal ion in the catalytic mechanism. The catalytic activity of the proteases is required to cleave a target substrate. Serine and metalloproteinases are most active at neutral pH, while cysteine and aspartic proteases, found predominantly in lysosomes, have acidic pH optima. Thus, lysosomal proteases include proteases of the cysteine and aspartic protease families. Other families of enzymes include the hydrolases such as esterases that act on ester bonds and glycolases that hydrolyze O- or S-glycosyl compounds or N-glycosyl compounds. Exemplary of a glycosyl hydrolase is heparanase.

Exemplary matrix-degrading enzymes are set forth in TABLE 3 (see e.g., Chapman et al., *Am J. Physiol Heart Circ. Physiol.* (2004) 286:1-10; Iozzo RV, *Proteoglycans: Structure, biology, and Molecular Interactions*, CRC Press (2000), pp. 94-96; Owen et al. (1999) *J. Leuk. Biol.*, 65:137-150; Buhling et al. (2004) *Eur. Respir. J.*, 23:620-628; Thomas Kreis and Ronald Cale, *Extracellular Matrix, Anchor and Adhesion Proteins*, Oxford University Press (1999) pp. 515-523; Ian M. Clark and Gillian Murphy. "Matrix Proteinases," in *Dynamics of Bone and Cartilage Metabolism*, Academic Press (2006), pp. 181-198; Buck et al. (1992) *Biochem J.*, 282:273-278). The sequence identifiers (SEQ ID NO) for the nucleotide sequence (mRNA) and encoded amino acid sequence of the precursor polypeptide for each of the exemplary proteases is depicted in the Table. The sequence identifiers (SEQ ID NO) for the amino acid sequence of the proprotein for each of the exemplary proteases also is depicted in the Table, as well as the amino acid positions within the proprotein that correspond to the propeptide. Variations also exist among allelic and species variants and other variants known in the art, and such variants also are contemplated for use as activatable enzymes. The Table also sets forth exemplary ECM target substrates for each enzyme. Reference to such substrates is for reference and exemplification, and are not intended to represent an exhaustive list of all target substrates. One of skill in the art knows or can empirically determine ECM target substrates for a desired enzyme using routine assays, just as any described herein.

Matrix-degrading enzymes can be produced or isolated by any method known in the art including isolation from natural sources, isolation of recombinantly produced proteins in cells, tissues and organisms and by recombinant methods and by methods including *in silico* steps, synthetic methods and any methods known to those of skill in the art. Typically, enzymes are produced or isolated in an inactive form. Conditional activation can be achieved as described below.

TABLE 3 : Matrix-Degrading Enzymes						
Protease	Substrate	Enzyme databank access code (EC) www.expasy.ch/sprot/enzyme.html	GenBank No.	SEQ ID NO		
				Precursor		mature
				nt	aa (aa of signal sequence(ss); aa of pro-peptide (pp))	aa
Serine Protease						
Pancreatic elastase (PE1; Elastase-1)	elastin	3.4.21.36	Q9UNI1; NM_001971	19	20 (ss aa 1-8; pp aa 9-18)	21
Elastase-2A	elastin	3.4.21.71	P08217; NM_033440	22	23 (ss aa 1-16; pp aa 17-28)	24
Elastase-2B	elastin	3.4.21.71	P08218; NM_015849	25	26 (aa aa 1-16; pp aa 17-28)	27
Neutrophil elastase (NE; leukocyte elastase; elastase-2)	Elastin, fibronectin, laminin, collagen type II, IV, VI, proteoglycans	3.4.21.37	P08246 NM_001972	28	29 (ss aa 1-17; pp aa 28-29)	30
Proteinase-3 (PR-3; myeloblastin)	elastin, fibronectin, laminin, vitronectin, collagen type IV	3.4.21.76	P24158 NM_002777	31	32 (ss aa 1-25; pp aa 26-27, 249-256)	33
Endogenous vascular elastase (EVE; tissue elastase; complement factor D)	elastin	3.4.21.46	S73894 (<i>Rattus sp.</i>)	34	35 (ss aa 1-20; pp aa 21-25)	36
Cathepsin G	collagen type IV, laminin, fibronectin, proteoglycan, elastin	EC 3.4.21.20	P08311 NM_001911	37	38 (ss aa 1-18; pp aa 19-20)	39
Mast cell chymase	collagen type IV, laminin, fibronectin, proteoglycan	3.4.21.39	P23946 NM_001836	40	41 (ss aa 1-19; pp aa 20-21)	42
Mast cell trypase	fibronectin, fibrinogen,	3.4.21.59	Q9BZJ3 NM_01221	43	44 (ss aa 1-18;	45

TABLE 3 : Matrix-Degrading Enzymes						
Protease	Substrate	Enzyme databank access code (EC) www.expasy.ch/sprot/enzyme.html	GenBank No.	SEQ ID NO		
				Precursor		mature
				nt	aa (aa of signal sequence(ss); aa of pro-peptide (pp))	aa
	collagen type IV, proteoglycan		7		pp aa 19-30)	
Plasmin	Proteoglycan, fibronectin, laminin	3.4.21.7	P00747 NM_000301	46	47 (ss aa 1-19; pp aa 20-97)	48
Thrombin	proteoglycan	3.4.21.5	P00734 NM_000506	49	50 (ss aa 1-24; pp aa 25-43)	51
Granzyme B	proteoglycan	3.4.21.79	P10144 NM_004131	52	53 (ss aa 1-18; pp aa 19-20)	54
Cysteine Protease						
Cathepsin S	Elastin, collagen	EC 3.4.22.27	P25774 NM_004079	55	56 (ss 1-16; pp 17-114)	57
Cathepsin K	elastin, collagen I and III	EC 3.4.22.38	P43235 NM_000396	58	59 (ss aa 1-15; pp aa 16-114)	60
Cathepsin L	elastin, collagen I and IV	EC <u>3.4.22.15</u>	P07711	61	62 (ss aa 17; pp aa 18-113)	1
Cathepsin B	Collagen IV, laminin, fibronectin	EC 3.4.22.1	P07858 NM_001908	63	64 (ss aa 1-17; pp aa 18-79)	65
Cathepsin C	Proteoglycans (decorin)	EC 3.4.14.1	P53634 NM_001814	178	179 (ss aa 1-24; pp aa 135-230)	180
Cathepsin H	fibronectin	EC 3.4.22.16	P09668 X16832	66	67 (ss aa 1-22; pp aa 23-97)	68
Cathepsin F	Collagen fragments	EC 3.4.22.41	Q9R013 NM_019861 (<i>Mus musculus</i>)	69	70 (ss aa 1-19; pp aa 20-248)	71
Cathepsin F	Collagen fragments	EC 3.4.22.41	Q9UBX1 NM_003793	181	182 (ss aa 1-19; pp 20-270)	183
Cathepsin O	fibrinogen	EC 3.4.22.42	Q8BM88 NM_177662 (<i>mus musculus</i>)	72	73 (aa aa1-23; pp aa 24-98)	74

TABLE 3 : Matrix-Degrading Enzymes						
Protease	Substrate	Enzyme databank access code (EC) www.expasy.ch/sprot/enzyme.html	GenBank No.	SEQ ID NO		
				Precursor		mature
				nt	aa (aa of signal sequence(ss); aa of pro-peptide (pp))	aa
Cathepsin O	fibrinogen	EC 3.4.22.42	P43234 NM_001334	184	185 (ss aa 1-23; pp aa 24-107)	186
Cathepsin R		EC3.4.22.-	Q9JIA9 NM_020284 (<i>mus musculus</i>)	75	76 (ss aa 1-17; pp aa 18-114)	77
Cathepsin V (Cathepsin L2)	collagen	EC 3.4.22.43	O60911 NM_001333	187	188 (ss aa 1-17; pp aa 18-113)	189
Cathepsin W		EC 3.4.22.-	P56202 NM_001335	78	79 (ss aa 1-21; pp aa 22-127)	80
Calpain 1	fibronectin, vitronectin, proteoglycans	EC 3.4.22.52	Calpain 1 large subunit: P07384 NM_005186	81		82
Calpain 2	fibronectin, vitronectin, proteoglycans	EC3.4.22.53	Calpain 2 large subunit: P17655 NM_001748	83	84 (aa 1 initiating methionine)	85
		Calpain small subunit 1 (associates with Calpain 1 and 2 large subunits) P04632 NM_001749		86		87
Legumain		EC 3.4.22.34	Q99538 NM_005606	190	191 (ss aa 1-17; pp aa 324-433)	192
Cathepsin Z (cathepsin X)		EC 3.4.22.-	Q9UBR2 NM_001336	193	194 (ss aa 1-23; pp aa 24-61)	195
Aspartic Protease						
Cathepsin D	proteoglycan	EC 3.4.23.5	P07339 NM_001909	88	89 (ss aa 1-18; pp aa 19-64)	90
Cathepsin E	proteoglycan	EC 3.4.23.34	P14091 Isoform a	91	92	93

TABLE 3 : Matrix-Degrading Enzymes						
Protease	Substrate	Enzyme databank access code (EC) www.expasy.ch/sprot/enzyme.html	GenBank No.	SEQ ID NO		
				Precursor		mature
				nt	aa (aa of signal sequence(ss); aa of pro-peptide (pp))	aa
			NM_001910 Isoform b NM_148964	94	(ss aa 1-17; pp aa 18-53) 95 (ss aa 1-17; pp aa 18-53)	96
Metallo-Protease						
MMP-1 (collagenase-1)	collagen I, II, III, VII, X, gelatin, proteoglycan, fibronectin, glycoprotein	3.4.24.7	P03956, NM_002421	97	98 (ss aa 1-19; pp aa 20-99)	99
MMP-8 (collagenase-2)	collagen I, II, III, VII, X, gelatin, proteoglycan, aggrecan	3.4.24.34	P22894 NM_002424	100	101 (ss aa 1-20; pp aa 21-100)	102
MMP-13 (collagenase-3)	collagen I, II, III, gelatin, proteoglycan	3.4.24.-	P45452 NM_002427	103	104 (ss aa 1-19; pp aa 20-103)	105
MMP-18 (collagenase-4)	collagen I	3.4.24.-	<i>Xenopus laevis</i> O13065	106	107 (ss aa 1-17; pp aa 18-99)	108
MMP-2 (gelatinase A)	gelatins, collagen I, IV, V, VII, elastin, fibronectin, laminin, proteoglycan	3.4.24.24	P08253 NM_004530	109	110 (ss aa 1-29; pp 30-109)	111
MMP-9 (gelatinase B)	gelatin, collagen IV, V, XIV, elastin, proteoglycan, glycoprotein	3.4.24.35	P14780 NM_004994	112	113 (ss aa 1-19; pp aa 20-93)	114
MMP-3 (stromelysin-1)	fibronectin, laminin, collagen III, IV, IX	3.4.24.17	P08254 NM_002422	115	116 (ss aa 1-17; pp aa 18-99)	117
MMP-10 (stromelysin-2)	Collagen III, IV, V,	3.4.24.22	P09238 NM_002422	118	119 (ss aa 1-17;	120

TABLE 3 : Matrix-Degrading Enzymes						
Protease	Substrate	Enzyme databank access code (EC) www.expasy.ch/sprot/enzyme.html	GenBank No.	SEQ ID NO		
				Precursor		mature
				nt	aa (aa of signal sequence(ss); aa of pro-peptide (pp))	aa
2)	fibronectin, aggrecan		5		pp aa 18-98)	
MMP-11 (stromelysin-3)	Fibronectin, Laminin, Aggrecan	3.4.24.-	P24347 X57766	121	122 (ss aa 1-31; pp aa 32-97)	123
MMP-7 (matrilysin)	fibronectin, laminin, elastin, gelatin, collagen I, IV	3.4.24.23	P09237 NM_002423	124	125 (ss aa 1-17; pp aa 18-94)	126
MMP-26 (matrilysin-2)	Collagen IV, fibronectin	3.4.24.-	Q9NRE1 NM_021801	127	128 (ss aa 1-17; pp aa 18-89)	129
MMP-12 (metalloelastase)	elastin, fibronectin, laminin, collagen IV, proteoglycan	3.4.24.65	P39900 NM_002426	130	131 (ss aa 1-16; pp aa 17-105)	132
MMP-14 (MT1-MMP)	Collagen I, II, III, aggrecan, fibronectin, vitronectin, laminin	3.4.24.80	P50281 NM_004995	133	134 (ss aa 1-20; pp aa 21-111)	135
MMP-15 (MT2-MMP)	Aggrecan, fibronectin, laminin	EC 3.4.24.-	P51511 NM_002428	136	137 (ss aa 1-41; pp aa 42-131)	138
MMP-16 (MT3-MMP)	Collagen III, fibronectin, laminin	EC 3.4.24.-	P51512 NM_005941	139	140 (ss aa 1-31; pp aa 32-119)	141
MMP-17 (MT4-MMP)	fibronectin	EC 3.4.24.-	Q9ULZ9 AB021225	142	143 (ss aa 1-38; pp aa 39-128)	144
MMP-19	Collagen I, IV, gelatin, aggrecan	EC 3.4.24.-	Q99542 NM_002429	145	146 (ss aa 1-18; pp aa 19-97)	147
MMP-20 (enamelysin)	aggrecan	EC 3.4.24.-	O60882 Y12779	148	149 (ss aa 1-22; pp aa 23-107)	150
MMP-x (XMMP)	No substrates defined	EC 3.4.24.-	O93470 NM_001085816 (<i>Xenopus</i>)	151	152 (ss aa 1-22; pp aa 23-180)	153

TABLE 3 : Matrix-Degrading Enzymes						
Protease	Substrate	Enzyme databank access code (EC) www.expasy.ch/sprot/enzyme.html	GenBank No.	SEQ ID NO		
				Precursor		mature
				nt	aa (aa of signal sequence(ss); aa of pro-peptide (pp))	aa
ADAMTS-1	aggrecan	EC 3.4.24.	Q9UHI8 NM_006988	157	158 (ss aa 1-49; pp aa 50-252)	159
ADAMTS-2	Procollagen I, procollagen II	EC 3.4.24.	O95450 AJ003125	160	161 (ss aa 1-29; pp aa 30-253)	162
ADAMTS-3	Procollagen II	EC 3.4.24.14	O15072 NM_014243	163	164 (aa 1-229)	165
ADAMTS-4 (aggrecanase-1)	aggrecan	EC 3.4.24.82	O75173 NM_005099	166	167 (ss aa 1-51; pp aa 52-212)	168
ADAMTS-5 (aggrecanase-2)	aggrecan	EC 3.4.24.	Q9UNA0 NM_007038	169	170 (ss aa 1-16; pp aa 17-261)	171
ADAMTS-14	Procollagen I	EC 3.4.24.	Isoform a NM_139155	172	173 (ss aa 1-22; pp aa 23-252)	174
			Isoform a NM_080722	175	176 (ss aa 1-22; pp aa 23-252)	177
Other						
Heparanase	Proteoglycan	EC 3.2.-.-	Q9Y251 AF152376	154	155 (ss aa 1-35; pp aa 110-157)	156

1. Enzyme Activation

Most proteases are synthesized and secreted as inactive forms and require further processing to become active. Activation is typically achieved by conformational, steric or other changes that reveal the enzymes active site. With the exception of calpains, all protease enzymes are typically synthesized as zymogens. Zymogen activation prevents unwanted protein degradation that could occur if proteases were always present in an active form. Generally, zymogens contain N-terminal portions (or prosegments or proregions) that sterically block the active site of

the protease and prevent access of substrates to the active site of the protease. The prosegments of the zymogens range in size from two residues to 150 residues. Upon secretion from a preproenzyme form, the proenzyme (containing the prosegment) is inactive.

5 Upon proteolytic removal of the prosegment of the zymogen, either autocatalytically or by other proteases, the active site of the enzyme is exposed resulting in a mature protease, and typically, activation. In some cases, however, additional cofactors also are required for complete activation. For example, pH change triggers the activation of enzymes of the cysteine, aspartic and metalloprotease
10 families. Low pH acts to increase the susceptibility of the prosegment as a substrate during zymogen conversion or causes a conformational change in the prosegment or enzyme (Jerala et al. (1998) *J Biol. Chem.*, 273:11498-11504). Lysosomal enzymes, such as cathepsins of the cysteine and aspartic protease families, require acidic conditions before complete activation is achieved. Besides pH, other cofactors
15 include, but are not limited to, salt concentration, metal ions such as calcium, heat or temperature. Thus, various mechanisms of zymogen conversion exist and vary between protease families (see e.g., Khan *et al.* (1998) *Protein Science*, 7:815-836; Khan et al. (1999) *PNAS*, 96: 10968-10975). For example, zymogen conversion to the active enzyme often occurs as a result of proteolysis by autocatalysis or actions of
20 other proteases, changes in pH, or the involvement of accessory molecules or ions, or a combination or one or more of the above conditions. Further control over the time and location of action often is achieved by protein inhibitors (Stroud et al. (1977) *Ann. Rev. Biophys. Bioeng.*, 6:177-93)

a. Serine Proteases

25 Serine proteases (SPs), which include secreted enzymes and enzymes sequestered in cytoplasmic storage organelles, have a variety of physiological roles, including in blood coagulation, wound healing, digestion, immune responses and tumor invasion and metastasis. Many serine proteases degrade components of the extracellular matrix (see Table 2 above). For example, proteases involved in the
30 degradation and remodeling of extracellular matrix (ECM) contribute to tissue remodeling, and are necessary for cancer invasion and metastasis.

The activity of proteases in the serine protease family is dependent on a set of amino acid residues that form their active site. One of the residues is always a serine; hence their designation as serine proteases. The mechanism of cleavage of a target

protein by a serine protease is based on nucleophilic attack of the targeted peptidic bond by a serine. The catalytic serine forms a covalently-attached tetrahedral intermediate with the carbonyl atom of the scissile peptide bond of substrates. In many cases the nucleophilic property of the group is improved by the presence of a histidine, held in a "proton acceptor state" by an aspartate. Aligned side chains of serine, histidine and aspartate build the catalytic triad common to most serine proteases.

Most serine proteases exist as zymogens in the precursor form, and thus are inactive. In the zymogen form of the protease active site for catalysis is distorted compared to the active enzyme. In fact, serine proteases are the only family of proteases who have conformational differences in the active site between the zymogen and active form of the protease. Thus, the catalytic triad exists in the zymogen, but a distorted loop from the proenzyme partially obstructs the substrate-binding cleft. As a result, the substrate polypeptide cannot bind effectively, and proteolysis does not occur. Only after activation, during which the conformation and structure of the zymogen change and the active site is opened, can proteolysis occur.

Serine proteases are active at neutral pH. Zymogen conversion occurs following limited proteolysis, such as by highly specific catalytic cleavage by another protease or by auto-activation. For example, the conversion of the inactive prothrombin to the active form of the enzyme (thrombin) is achieved by a highly specific catalytic cleavage of the prosegment by another of the clotting enzymes (factor Xa). Other serine proteases use similar mechanisms, but the activation cleavage sites differ and thus serine proteases typically are activated by different convertases.

Granule-associated serine proteases, including but not limited to, granzymes A and B, cathepsin G, neutrophil elastase, proteinase 3, and mast cell tryptase and chymase require a dual proteolytic event for activation. These enzymes are synthesized as preproenzymes; cleavage of the signal peptide results in a proenzyme zymogen form that is inactive. Granule-associated serine proteases contain a a prodipeptide at the N-terminus of the enzyme, and also contain a carboxyl-terminal extension which also must be removed for activation. The prodipeptide prevents folding of the mature enzyme into a catalytically active formation. Activation of the granule-associated serine proteases is achieved by cleavage of both the carboxy-terminal extension and the prodipeptide. Cathepsin C has been implicated in cleavage

of the prodiptide in at least some granule-associated serine proteases (Kummer et al. (1996) J Biol. Chem., 271:9281-9286).

b. Cysteine Proteases

Cysteine proteases contain a Cys-His pair in their active site, and their
 5 catalytic activation involves a cysteine sulfhydryl group. Deprotonation of the
 cysteine sulfhydryl by an adjacent histidine residue is followed by nucleophilic attack
 of the cysteine on the peptide carbonyl carbon. A thioester linking the new carboxy-
 terminus to the cysteine thiol is an intermediate of the reaction (comparable to the
 acyl-enzyme intermediate of a serine protease). Cysteine proteases include papain,
 10 cathepsin, caspases, and calpains. The mechanisms of activation of these different
 families of cysteine proteases differ.

i. Cathepsins

Papain-like cysteine proteases, include the cathepsin, are a family of thiol
 dependent endo-peptidases related by structural similarity to papain. They form a
 15 two-domain protein with the domains labeled R and L (for right and left) and loops
 from both domains form a substrate recognition cleft. The cathepsins are synthesized
 as zymogens containing a prosegment; the prosegment acts as an N-terminal
 inhibitory prosegments. Although there is about 25% sequence identity among the
 mature enzymes, the prosegments exhibit little sequence similarity. The prosegment
 20 functions as a potent inhibitor of the mature enzyme. The prosegment also serves
 other functions such as playing a role in the folding and stability of the enzyme during
 synthesis and transport at neutral pH.

Cathepsins of the cysteine protease family are lysosomal enzymes and thus are
 optimally active below pH 7 and become inactive above pH 7. Cathepsins are
 25 synthesized as inactive precursors (i.e. zymogens), and are activated by proteolytic
 removal of the prosegment. This results in the generation of single-chain enzymes.
 Generally, the single chain enzymes can be processed into two chain forms containing
 a heavy chain and a light chain. Typically, the two chains are held together via
 noncovalent interactions or via disulfide bridges. Hence, mature cathepsin exist in
 30 single-chain or in two-chain form.

The removal of the propeptide can be facilitated either by activation by other
 proteases or by autocatalytic activation at acidic pH (Turk et al. (2001) The EMBO
 Journal, 20:4629-4633). The pH dependence of the zymogen conversion process is
 regulated by conserved salt bridges in the prosegment (e.g., Asp82p and Arg38p and

Glu87p and Arg48p in procathepsinL set forth in SEQ ID NO:62). Disruption of the salt bridges by protonation of the carboxylate groups at the lower pH disrupts the hydrophobic core of the prosegment resulting in dissociation of the prosegment from the active site (Khan *et al.* (1998) *Protein Science*, 7:815-836). The residues
 5 conferring formation of salt bridges can differ between cathepsins. For example, procathepsin B uses alternative salt-bridge interactions for its pH-dependent zymogen conversion (Coulombe *et al.* (1996) *EMBO J.*, 15:5492-5503).

Acidic pH conditions are required for the activity of mature cathepsins; zymogen conversion itself is not sufficient for enzyme activity. In addition to its
 10 requirement for activity, the acidic pH also stabilizes the enzyme. Inactivation and destabilization of cathepsins at higher pH conditions is caused by deprotonation of the imidazole moiety of the active site $-S^{+/+}Him-$ ion pair, and “unzipping” of the structure along the active site groove (Dehrmann *et al.* (1995) *Arch. Biochem. Biophys.*, 324:93-98). Hence, most cathepsins have optimal activity and stability at
 15 an acidic pH. For example, cathepsins B, F, H, K, L and V are optimally active in acidic environments and are only weakly active or not active at neutral pH (Lutgens *et al.* (2007) *The FASEB J.*, 21: 3029-3041). Some cathepsins, *e.g.* cathepsin L, lose their activity quickly after incubation at a neutral pH. Some cathepsins maintain their enzymatic activity even after incubation at neutral pH, and thus can degrade matrix
 20 proteins under physiological conditions. Cathepsins C and S have been found to have the highest pH stability, while cathepsins K and V display intermediate pH stability. *In vitro* investigations have shown that cathepsin K can degrade fibril proteins at neutral pH. (Buhling *et al.* (2004) *Eur. Respir. J.*, 23:620-628).

Cathepsin L

25 Cathepsin L (CatL) is a lysosomal acid cysteine protease that belongs to the papain family. The human cathepsin L gene encodes a 333 amino acid cysteine protease that contains a 17 amino acid signal peptide, a 96-amino acid propeptide and a 220 amino acid mature region. (see SEQ ID NOS: 61 and 62 and GenBank Accession No. P07711). Cathepsin L also includes allelic and species variants, and
 30 other variants. Exemplary of such variants are any set forth in SEQ ID NOS: 208 to 223 and 234. Cathepsin L is synthesized as an inactive proenzyme, and like other proteases, contains a propeptide corresponding to amino acids 18-113 of the sequence of amino acids set forth in SEQ ID NO: 62. The propeptide inhibits the proteolytic activity of the enzyme. The propeptide segment also functions to stabilize the

proenzyme from the denaturing effects of neutral to alkaline pH (Coulombe et al. (1996) *The EMBO J.*, 15:5492-5503). Cleavage of the propeptide occurs by autoprocessing under acidic conditions resulting in a mature enzyme that is active and has catalytic activity under acidic conditions. The mature cathepsin L (set forth in
 5 SEQ ID NO:1) can exist as a single chain form of about 28 kDa and/or as a two-chain form of about 24 and 4 kDa (heavy and light chain, respectively). Allelic and species variants of cathepsin L are known. Exemplary species variants are any set forth in SEQ ID NOS: 208-223, including nucleic acids and encoded polypeptide and mature forms thereof lacking the signal sequence and propeptide. Exemplary allelic variants
 10 are any set forth in SEQ ID NO:234.

Cathepsin L is primarily localized to endosomes and lysosomes. The optimal proteolytic capacity of mature cathepsin L is achieved at an acidic pH of about 5.5, and it is inactive at neutral pH (Bohley P et al., "Intracellular Protein Turnover." In: S. Holzer and H. Tschesche (eds.). *Biological Functions of Proteinases*, pp. 17-34,
 15 Berlin: Springer-Verlag. 1979). The pH optima of cathepsin L can be influenced by ionic strength, and therefore the pH optima differs between buffers (Dehrmann et al. (1995) *Arch. Biochem. Biophys.*, 324: 93-98). Procathepsin L is stable under neutral and slightly alkaline pH, conditions where mature cathepsin L is inactivated (Jerala *et al.* (1998) *J. Biol. Chem.*, 273:11498-11504).

20 Cathepsin L degrades proteins substrates, including, but not limited to, collagen, IL-8 precursor, neurotransmitter precursor, pro-enkephalin, and immunoglobulin light chain-associated (AL) amyloid deposits and azocasein (Barret & Kirschke (1981) *Methods Enzymol.*, 80:535-561; Mason et al., (1985) *Biochem. J.*, 226:233-241). CatL is rapidly inhibited by Z-Phe-Ala-CHN₂.

25 **ii. Calpain**

Calpain is a Ca²⁺-dependent cytoplasmic cysteine protease that exists in two predominant forms, μ -calpain (calpain 1) and m-calpain (calpain 2). Calpain substrates include cytoskeletal proteins, signal-transducing enzymes, transcriptional regulatory factors and integral membrane proteins. Among ECM components,
 30 calpains degrade fibronectin, vitronectin and proteoglycans (Ian M. Clark and Gillian Murphy. "Matrix Proteinases," in *Dynamics of Bone and Cartilage Metabolism*, Academic Press (2006), pp. 181-198).

Calpains exist as inactive heterodimers (and ~80 kDa and ~30 kDa subunits), and require Ca²⁺ for autocatalysis. μ -calpain and m-calpain differ in their sensitivity

to Ca^{2+} required for activation; μ -calpain is half-maximally activated at low micromolar calcium concentrations, which is about an order of magnitude lower than those concentrations required to activate m-calpain (Meyer et al. (1996) *Biochem. J.*, 314:511-519). Upon activation, both subunits of calpain undergo limited autolysis that removes the N-terminal prosegment and increases calcium sensitivity. Autolysis itself is not sufficient to activate calpain because the autolyzed protease still requires calcium to cleave substrate ((Meyer et al. (1996) *Biochem. J.*, 314:511-519). Thus, sustained activation of calpain requires the presence of calcium. The calcium requirements are considerably higher than physiological Ca^{2+} concentrations, which is generally 1 μM . For example, in vitro μ -calpain requires a calcium concentration of 10-50 μM and m-calpain requires a calcium concentration of 300-500 μM (Hosfield et al. (1999) *The EMBO J.*, 18:6880-6889). Due to the calcium requirement, calpain is regulated by regional calcium fluxes and/or membrane binding (Molianri and Carafoli (1997) *J Membr. Biol.*, 43:543-5.) Calcium likely induces a conformation change to expose the active site of the protease. Calpastatin is a specific cellular inhibitor of calpains.

c. Aspartic Proteases

Aspartate proteases include some proteases found in lysosomes that have been shown to degrade ECM components. Included among these are cathepsins D and E. For activity, two aspartate residues participate in acid/base catalysis at the active site. In the initial reaction, one aspartate accepts a proton from an active site H_2O , which attacks the carbonyl carbon of the peptide linkage. Simultaneously, the other aspartate donates a proton to the oxygen of the peptide carbonyl group.

The zymogen form of aspartate proteases contain a positively charged N-terminal prosegment that interacts with the central portion of the enzyme forming salt-bridges with the negatively charged segment. Due to the positioning of the prosegment and the formation of the salt bridges, substrates are prevented from accessing the active site. Zymogen conversion to an active enzyme occurs by disruption of the salt bridges at low pH. Exposure to low pH results in protonation of the carboxylate side chains of Asp and Glu residues, resulting in destabilization of salt bridges between the prosegment and mature enzyme. Once removed, the prosegment is autocatalytically degraded by the active enzyme. Subsequent hydrolysis of the prosegment ensures that activation is irreversible, and that the released prosegment will not act as a competitive inhibitor of the active enzyme. Further, no other

accessory molecules are required for conversion (Khan *et al.* (1998) *Protein Science*, 7:815-836). Like cathepsins of the cysteine protease family, however, acidic pH conditions are required for activity and stability of the mature enzymes.

d. Metalloproteases

5 Metalloproteases (also called Zinc proteases) include the digestive enzymes carboxypeptidases, various matrix metalloproteases (MMPs) that are secreted by cells, ADAMs (a disintegrin and metalloprotease domain), ADAMTS (a disintegrin and a metalloproteinase domain with thrombospondin motifs) and lysosomal proteases. These enzymes, including ADAMs and MMPs, have roles in embryonic
10 development, cell growth and proliferation, inflammatory responses, wound repair, multiple sclerosis, arthritis, and cancer progression and metastasis (Manzetti *et al.*, (2003) *J of Computer-Aided Mol. Design*, 17: 551). Most MMPs (e.g., collagenase) are involved in degradation of the extracellular matrix, for example, during tissue remodeling. For example, many of these enzymes can cleave components of the
15 basement membrane and extracellular matrix.

Metalloproteases contain a Zn^{2+} ion at the active center of the enzyme required for catalytic activity. A zinc binding motif at the active site of a metalloprotease includes two histidine residues whose imidazole side-chains are ligands to the Zn^{++} . During catalysis, the Zn^{++} promotes nucleophilic attack on the
20 carbonyl carbon by the oxygen atom of a water molecule at the active site. An active site base (a glutamate residue in carboxypeptidase) facilitates this reaction by extracting a proton from the attacking water molecule. Generally, these enzymes have a common zinc binding motif (HExxHxxGxxH) in their active site, and a conserved methionine turn following the active site. Mutation of any one of the
25 histidines ablates catalytic activity.

The zymogen form of metalloproteases contains a prosegment of about 80-100 residues in length. In the zymogen form, the residues within the substrate binding site of the mature enzyme and the catalytic Zn^{2+} ions are in the same conformational position as in the active form, and do not change upon zymogen conversion. The
30 enzyme is inactive because the prosegment is positioned to block the site, thus preventing access to substrates. Conversion of the zymogen to the active enzyme results from cleavage of the prosegment from the mature enzyme. Multiple mechanisms are capable of initiating cleavage events, including actions by other proteases, heat, mercurial agents (e.g. 4-amino-phenylmercuric acetate), SH-reactive

agents, reactive oxygen and detergents (see e.g., Khan *et al.* (1998) *Protein Science*, 7:815-836; Okada *et al.* (1988) *Biochem J.*, 254:731-741; ; Okada & Nakanashi (1989) *FEBS Lett.*, 249:353-356;; Nagase *et al.* (1990) *Biochemistry*, 29:5783-5789; Koklitis *et al.* (1991) *Biochem J.*, 276:217-221; Springman *et al.* (1990) *PNAS*, 87:364-8; Murphy *et al.* (1997) *Matrix Biol.*, 15:511-8).

e. Heparanase

Heparanase is a glycosylated enzyme that is involved in the catabolism of certain glycosaminoglycans. It is an endo- β -glucuronidase that cleaves heparan sulfate at specific intrachain sites. Heparanase is a member of the glycosyl hydrolase clan A (GH-A), which share a common catalytic mechanism that involves two conserved acidic residues, a putative proton donor at Glu²²⁵ and a nucleophile at Glu³⁴³ (Hulett *et al.* (2000) *Biochemistry*, 39:15659-15667). Interaction of T and B lymphocytes, platelets, granulocytes, macrophages and mast cells with the subendothelial extracellular matrix (ECM) is associated with degradation of heparan sulfate by heparanase activity.

Human heparanase cDNA encodes a protein that is initially synthesized as a pre-pro- protein with a signal peptide sequence that is removed by signal peptidase upon translocation into the endoplasmic reticulum (ER). The resulting 65 kDa pro-enzyme form is further processed by proteolytic cleavage resulting in excision of an intervening 6 kDa fragment generating an 8 kDa polypeptide and a 50 kDa polypeptide, forming a heterodimer. The sequence of amino acids of the mature heparanase is set forth in SEQ ID NO:156. Heparanase activity and localization is tightly regulated. For example, the enzyme is highly sensitive to changes in local pH, exerting a high enzymatic activity under acidic conditions that exists in the vicinity of tumors and in inflammatory sites with little or no activity at a physiological pH. Thus, heparanase-mediated cleavage of the HS scaffold is a pH-dependent process; maximal enzymatic activity is achieved at pH values ranging from 4-6.8 (Gilat *et al.* (1995) *J Exp. Med.*, 181:1929-1934; Goldschmidt *et al.* (2003) *The FASEB J.*, 17:1105-1025). At physiological pH, heparanase exhibits little activity. The pH-dependence ensures that the structural breakdown of the ECM is confined to more acidic conditions, such as occurs in endosome and at sites of injury or inflammation (McKenzie *et al.* (2003) *Biochem. J.*, 373:423-435).

D. Activatable Matrix-Degrading Enzymes (AMDE)

Matrix-degrading enzymes require zymogen conversion for activation by cleavage of the prosegment to generate a mature enzyme. As discussed above, many matrix-degrading enzymes also require the continued presence of one or more other activating conditions for activity. Exemplary of such activating conditions include, but are not limited to, pH, metal ions, temperature and salt concentration. For example, many enzymes require specific pH values or metal ion concentration or salt concentration for activity. In one example, lysosomal enzymes require acidic pH conditions for activity. For example, cathepsins of the cysteine and aspartic family of proteases require acidic pH conditions for activity. Heparanase also is a lysosomal enzyme that accumulates in lysosomes for normal processing in the acidic environment. Generally, the acidic environment is provided in the acidic lysosomes where lysosomal proteases are normally localized. Outside of this environment, lysosomal proteases are inactive and require exogenous exposure to acidic pH for activity. In another example, an activating conditions include metal ion concentration. For example, the calpains require sufficient concentration of Ca^{2+} for activity. Activity of such enzymes is reversible in the absence of the activating condition.

By taking advantage of the requirement for exogenous activating conditions, activatable matrix-degrading enzymes can be made temporally active for a limited duration upon *in vivo* administration, for example to the ECM. Such activatable matrix-degrading enzymes are active only when exposed to exogenous activating conditions. Since the activating condition is not present at the site of administration and must be applied exogenously, the activating condition will become neutralized or dissipate over time after *in vivo* administration of an activator supplying the appropriate activating condition. Hence, activation of an AMDE is reversible following *in vivo* administration as the activator dissipates or is otherwise neutralized. For example, temporal activation of an AMDE can be achieved in the environment of the interstitium of the skin and other tissues by administering the AMDE in the presence of an exogenous activating condition (i.e. an activator) that is not present at the site of administration. Typically, the activating condition is one that is not present in the ECM, prior to administration of an activator providing the activating condition. Thus, exposure of an activatable matrix-degrading enzyme to an activating condition results in enzyme activation for a limited or predetermined time as the activating condition dissipates or is neutralized in the interstitial environment.

Hence, provided herein are compositions, combinations and containers containing activatable matrix-degrading enzymes that, upon *in vivo* administration, permit activation of the enzyme for a limited or predetermined period of time during which the enzyme can exert its biological action. By virtue of the reversible activity of the activatable enzymes, the enzymes become deactivated, thereby controlling the duration of the biological action of such enzymes. The activatable matrix-degrading enzymes are provided in combinations and containers with an activator that provides the activating condition. In addition, the activatable matrix-degrading enzyme and activator also can be combined or provided in combination, such as in containers, with other agents such as any one or more of an antisthetic, beta-adrenergic agent or dispersing agent. The activatable matrix-degrading enzymes are provided in a therapeutically effective amount, that when activated, degrade one or more components of the ECM upon administration, such as upon subcutaneous administration. The resulting activatable matrix-degrading enzymes can be used as therapeutics to treat ECM-mediated diseases or conditions.

Any matrix-degrading enzyme, whether synthetic or isolated from natural sources, such as those set forth in Table 3 or elsewhere herein, allelic or species variants or other variants thereof, or any known to those of skill in the art is intended for use in the compositions, combinations, methods and apparatus provided herein, so long as the enzyme is activatable due to the requirement of an activating condition. The activatable matrix-degrading enzymes are provided in an inactive form either as a zymogen or as an inactive mature polypeptide either in single-chain or two-chain form. For example, cathepsins even in their mature form are inactive and require acidic pH conditions for conformational stability. Activatable matrix-degrading enzymes include lysosomal proteases, such as cathepsins of the cysteine and aspartic family. Exemplary activatable matrix-degrading enzymes are any set forth in any of SEQ ID NOS:56, 59, 62, 64, 179, 67, 70, 73, 76, 182, 185, 188, 79, 194, 89, 92, 95 and 155 and mature forms thereof set forth in SEQ ID NOS: 57, 60, 1, 65, 180, 68, 71, 74, 77, 183, 186, 189, 80, 195, 90, 93, 96 and 156 or allelic variants or species variants or other variants thereof. One of skill in the art knows or could identify activatable matrix-degrading enzymes. For example, one of skill in the art could use routine assays of enzyme activation, such as any provided herein and known in the art, to assess the requirement of an exogenous activating condition for sustained or reversible activation of any desired enzyme.

Activatable matrix-degrading enzymes can be modified to alter any one or more properties or activities. For example, altered properties or activities include, but are not limited to, modification that render the enzyme more stable, alter the substrate specificity and/or confer temperature sensitivity to the enzyme. If desired, enzyme stability also can be increased by pegylation or glycosylation of the enzyme. Modification of polypeptides using standard recombinant DNA techniques is routine to one skilled in the art. For purposes herein, modified matrix-degrading enzymes retain one or more activities of the unmodified enzyme and are activatable. Retained activity can be 40%, 50%, 60%, 70%, 80%, 90%, 95% or more activity of the unmodified enzyme.

In one example, a matrix-degrading enzyme, for example, a cathepsin, can be modified such that its prosegment is not inhibitory. Modifications can be made by amino acid replacement, substitution or insertion within the prosegment itself, or within regions of the active site where the inhibitory interactions occur. Hence, a cathepsin could be provided in a zymogen form where autocatalysis occurs under acidic conditions; the cleaved prosegment of such a modified enzyme would not result in inactivation as occurs for wild-type cathepsins if provided in a zymogen form.

In another example, an activatable enzyme can be modified to alter its substrate specificity. For example, an enzyme can be modified to have increased specificity for a particular substrate. Thus, for example, cathepsin L, which exhibits substrate specificity for type I and type IV collagen can be modified so that it has increased substrate specificity for type I collagen, and not type IV collagen, and vice versa. Modifications of polypeptides can be achieved by routine molecular biology techniques, and are within the skill of one in the art. Modified enzymes can be tested for their substrate specificity using routine assays for substrate cleavage such as is described herein, or known in the art. For example, substrate cleavage can be assessed on fluorogenic peptides or on purified proteins. Cleavage can be assessed using *in vitro* or *in vivo* assays. For example, cleavage can be assessed by incubating the enzyme with the substrate, and then running the mixture on an SDS-PAGE gel. Degradation can be assessed by Western Blot or by using standard protein stains such as Coomassie Blue or Silver Stain reagents.

In an additional example, a matrix-degrading enzyme can be modified to have temperature sensitivity. For example, matrix-degrading enzymes that are active at physiological temperature (e.g. 37° C) can be modified and enzymes selected that are

active at lower temperatures (e.g., less than 37° C; e.g. at or about 20° C, 21° C, 22° C, 23° C, 24° C, 25° C, 26° C, 27° C, 28° C, 29° C or 30° C), but that are not active at physiological temperature. Hence, such modified enzymes can be used as activatable matrix-degrading enzymes where the activation condition is low temperature.

- 5 Administration of the enzymes simultaneously, intermittently, or subsequently with an activating condition providing the cold temperature (e.g. cold buffer) results in activation of the enzyme. The activation of the enzyme is temporally controlled as the *in vivo* temperature returns to the physiological temperature of 37° C.

10 **1. Activating Conditions and Methods for Activation of Activatable Matrix-Degrading Enzymes**

- Activatable matrix-degrading enzymes are inactive in the absence of an activating condition. Upon *in vivo* administration, temporal activation of such activatable matrix-degrading enzymes is achieved by exposure (prior to or upon administration subsequently, intermittently or simultaneously) to one or more specific
15 activators that provide an activating condition sufficient for activation of the enzyme. For example, activation can be achieved by exposure of activatable matrix-degrading enzymes to, for example, temperature (e.g. heat or cold), pH, salt, to solutions containing sufficient concentrations of metal ions (e.g., Ca²⁺) for activation, or other
20 methods as described herein or known to one of skill in the art. The choice of activator will vary depending upon the choice of enzyme as described herein or known to one of skill in the art. Generally, an amount (e.g. concentration, level or degree) of activator sufficient to generate an active enzyme is used. This amount can be readily determined empirically and is dependent upon the selected enzyme and selected application.

- 25 By virtue of the reversible and conditional activation of activatable enzymes, temporary activation is achieved, thereby regulating the duration of enzymatic action on extracellular matrix (ECM) components. This is an advantage of the present methods such that deleterious side effects associated with unwanted prolonged activation of enzymes can be controlled. Temporary activation is achieved because
30 activatable matrix-degrading enzymes require continuous exposure to activating conditions in order to remain active. Activating conditions are not normally present, endogenously, in sufficient amounts for activation of an enzyme at sites where activatable matrix degrading enzymes are administered *in vivo*. For example, the skin interstitium has a neutral pH, and thus a low pH activating condition is not normally

present. In another example, the physiological level of metal ions, such as calcium, in the skin interstitium, are far lower than the effective amounts required for activation of some enzymes. Thus, deactivation of enzymes can occur upon decreasing exposure of the enzyme to the exogenous activating condition as may occur following
 5 *in vivo* administration of an activatable enzyme where the exogenously supplied activating condition gradually dissipates or is neutralized.

Thus, activating conditions provided herein are those which are required for activation of an activatable matrix-degrading enzymes, but that are not normally present in sufficient amounts at the site of administration. The requirement for
 10 activating conditions for activation of activatable matrix-degrading enzymes permits activation of matrix-degrading enzymes for a limited time, until the activating condition dissipates or is neutralized such that the enzyme becomes inactive. The amount of time an enzyme is active can be for a predetermined time. For example, an activator can be provided containing an amount of activating condition, such as the
 15 concentration, effective amount, level or degree, that is chosen such that the enzyme is active for a set time under the environment and conditions it is exposed to upon *in vivo* administration. In one example, where acidic pH is the activating condition, the buffering capacity of an acidic buffer can be adjusted to modulate the time of its resistance to changes in pH. The predetermined time at which an activator activates a
 20 conditionally activatable matrix-degrading enzyme can be determined empirically and is a function of the disease to be treated, the individual treated, the choice of enzyme and the activator. An activatable matrix-degrading enzyme can be active following *in vivo* administration in the presence of an activator providing an activating condition for at or about 1 minute, 2 minutes, 3 minutes, 4 minutes, 5 minutes, 10 minutes, 20
 25 minutes, 30 minutes, 40 minutes, 50 minutes, 1 hour, 2 hour, 3 hours, 4 hours, 5 hours, 6 hours or more.

Exemplary activating conditions and activators and methods of temporal activation are described herein below. In view of such description, other embodiments will be apparent to one of skill in the art.

30 **a. Activating Condition – Acidic pH**

Compositions and methods for conditional activation of matrix-degrading enzymes whose activity is regulated by pH, and use of such enzymes to treat ECM-mediated diseases or conditions are provided herein. Such methods take advantage of proteins having enzymatic activity only at acidic pH, while remaining inactive at

neutral pH. Such proteins include lysosomal proteases, including, but not limited to, cathepsins of the cysteine and aspartic families, and also heparanase. For example, lysosomes, an acidic intracellular compartment, contain a large variety of hydrolytic enzymes that degrade proteins and other substances internalized by endocytosis. All
 5 intralysosomal proteases, for example, cathepsin L, exhibit an acid pH optimum. Exemplary of such proteases are any set forth in any of SEQ ID NOS: 57, 60, 1, 65, 180, 68, 71, 74, 77, 183, 186, 189, 80, 195, 90, 93, 96 and 156.

Methods of using matrix-degrading enzymes that are active only upon exposure to certain pH conditions are used herein to take advantage of pH
 10 differentials within the skin. Human epidermal systems maintain a pH gradient within the stratified layers of the skin. The outer layers have been reported to exhibit an average pH of 5.5 (W.P. Smith (1994) *Cosmetics and Toiletries*, 109:41-48). The pH of successive layers of the epidermis increases with depth, reaching a final pH closer to the physiological range (about pH 7.4) at the dermal layer.

15 Hence, it is contemplated herein that activatable matrix-degrading enzymes are employed that exhibit activity at acidic conditions, but are substantially inactive at neutral pH such as exists in the ECM. A substantially inactive enzyme is any exhibiting 10% or less activity of the enzyme at its pH optima, for example, at or about 1%, 2%, 3%, 4%, 5%, 6%, 7%, 8%, 9%, 9.5% or 10% of activity as present at
 20 the enzymes's pH optima. One of skill in the art knows or can determine the pH optima of an enzyme and can assess activity differences at varying pH conditions. For example, the pH optima of cathepsin L is or is about 5.5, but can vary within a range of 4.5 to 6 depending on the particular species of cathepsin L, buffer condition or ionic strength. Cathepsin L is substantially inactive at pH at or above 7.4
 25 (Dehrmann *et al.* (1995) *Arch. Biochem. Biophys.*, 324:93-98). In another example, the optimal activity of cathepsin D is or is about 3.0 to 4.0, and it is substantially inactive at pH values at or about 6.0 or higher (Rojas-Espinosa *et al.* (1973) *Infection and Immunity*, 8:1000-1008). Cathepsin S is one of the few lysosomal proteases that is stable at pH 7.0 (Bromme *et al.* (1993) *J Biol. Chem.*, 268: 4832-4838).

30 For purposes herein, an activatable enzyme is active in pH conditions at or about 3, 3.5, 4, 4.5, 5, 6 or 6.5, but is substantially inactive at neutral pH. A pH activity profile can be performed on an enzyme, and relative activity assessed, to determine its pH optima under various conditions (Dehrmann *et al.* (1995) *Arch. Biochem. Biophys.*, 324:93-98). It is understood that pH optima can be different

depending on the substrate used, buffer conditions, ionic strength and species of enzyme. Thus, reference to pH optima herein is for exemplification only. One of skill in the art can empirically determine the pH optima of an enzyme under specific conditions. For example, buffer conditions and ionic strengths can be varied to
5 determine an enzymes activity under various pH conditions. Enzyme assays to determine pH-activity profiles can be performed using fluorogenic substrates such as are described herein and known to one of skill in the art. The choice of fluorogenic substrate used will vary between enzymes, and is known to one of skill in the art or can be empirically determined.

10 Thus, the ability to conditionally activate matrix-degrading enzymes by administration with an activating condition not normally present at the site of administration permits the temporal regulation of, and alteration of, the physiological parameters of organs and tissues, such as the interstitium, exhibiting a neutral pH. Under normal physiological conditions, the pH of the interstitium is neutral. Thus,
15 activatable matrix-degrading enzymes active at low pH, such as lysosomal enzymes described herein, when present in the interstitium would normally be catalytically inactive because of the neutral pH of the interstitium. When the pH of the interstitium is temporarily rendered acidic, for example by administration of a buffered acid solution, lysosomal enzymes with optimal acidic pH when administered to the
20 interstitium will become activated. When the pH of the intersitium turns back towards neutrality, then the matrix-degrading enzymes with requiring acidic pH become inactivated and cease to exert their enzymatic activity.

Accordingly, it is contemplated herein that activatable matrix degrading enzymes that are substantially inactive at neutral pH can be administered sub-
25 epidermally under the skin (i.e. by subcutaneous, intradermal or intramuscular administration) where the pH is neutral. Other routes of administration of conditionally activatable matrix-degrading enzymes also are contemplated and can be empirically determined based on the pH optima of the particular enzyme such that the activity of the enzyme becomes reversible due to changes in the pH conditions upon
30 administration. Other routes of administration include, but are not limited to, oral, topical and transdermal routes of administration.

Since the interstitium of most tissues and organs exhibits a neutral pH, temporary acidification can be achieved by infusing an acidic solution to a tissue or organ interstitium. The acidic buffer is a composition that, when administered,

temporarily lowers the pH of the interstitium to less than or about 3.0, 3.5, 4.0, 4.5, 5.0, 5.5, 6.0 or 6.5 such that the activatable matrix-degrading enzyme is active. The acid component of the buffer is susceptible to neutralization by the neutral pH of the interstitium. Acidic buffers are known to one of skill in the art. For purposes herein, the acid component of the buffer can be an organic or inorganic acid. Generally, the solution is a solution of a weak acid. Exemplary acids include, but are not limited to, 2-(N-morpholino)ethanesulfonic acid (MES), acetic acid, citric acid, citric phosphate and histidine. The effective pH range of acidic buffers are known, and hence, appropriate buffers can be chosen based on the the pH optima of the selected enzyme. Exemplary of acidic buffers include, but are not limited to, acetate, citrate, formate, glycine, malate, MES, phosphate, piperazine, propionate, pyridine and succinate buffer. For example, the effective pH range of MES buffer is 5.5 to 6.7.

The time period required for neutralization, and subsequent inactivation of the acid activatable matrix-degradign enzyme, depends on the formulation of the acidic buffer. For example, shorter time periods result if the acid and/or buffering agents in the acidic buffer are weak relative to the neutralizing capacity of the interstitium; longer time periods result if a stronger acid is utilized or a stronger buffering agent is employed in the acidic buffer. Hence, the resistance to change in pH is dependent on the buffering capacity of the particular buffer. The higher the ionic strength or concentration of the buffer, the higher the buffer capacity. Thus, in the methods and compositions provided herein, temporal regulation of a matrix-degrading enzyme activated at a given pH can be further controlled by the buffering capacity of the buffer chosen. This is exemplified in Example 7. Determination of desired buffers for given applications is routine and within the level of one of skill in the art.

Typcially, the acidic solution is infused directly to a site where degradation of one or more ECM components is desired, for example, to treat an ECM-mediated disease or condition. The infusion of the activating condtion in the form of an acidic solution activator can be performed simulatenously, sequentially or intermittently with administration of an inactive activatable matrix-degrading enzyme. Where administration occurs simultaneously, the matrix-degrading enzyme and buffered acidic solution can be in the same or separate compositions. When in the same composition, the enzyme and buffered acidic solution can be provided in a composition as a mixture. Activation of the enzyme also can be achieved by addition of the acidic solution to a concentrated liquid solution or suspension or lyophilized or

powdered form of the enzyme prior to administration. Generally, where a liquid solution or suspension of an activatable matrix-degrading enzyme is provided, it is a solution or suspension that, when exposed to an activator providing the appropriate activating condition, is amenable to activation of the enzyme by the activating
5 condition.

In addition, in the combinations and methods provided herein, an activator having the activating condition (e.g. a buffered acidic solution) and matrix-degrading enzyme can be provided and administered in combination with any one or more other agents such as any one or more of an anesthetic, alpha adrenergic receptor agonist or
10 dispersing agent. Exemplary of such agents are discussed herein below in the Section entitled "Combination Therapies." The other agents can be administered simultaneously, sequentially or intermittently with the activator and/or matrix-degrading enzyme.

In one example of the methods provided herein, a buffered acid solution is
15 administered into the skin interstitium, or other tissue, where an ECM condition or disease is present. The buffered acidic solution can be chosen based on the pH required for activation of the a matrix-degrading enzyme and the desired buffering capacity to achieve activation of limited duration. For example, cathepsin L is an exemplary enzyme for purposes of treating a collagen-mediated disease, such as, for
20 example cellulite. Accordingly, the acidic buffer would be prepared at the optimum pH of 5.5 for activation of cathepsin L. Exemplary of such an acidic buffer is MES. The buffering capacity of the acidic solution also can be experimentally determined as desired, for example, as set forth in Example 7. Generally, the acidic buffer is administered just prior to or together with the matrix-degrading enzyme. For
25 example, if the matrix-degrading enzyme is provided in lyophilized form, the enzyme can be reconstituted with the acidic buffered solution just prior to administration, and the combination of the enzyme and activator administered together. In the presence of the acidic buffer, the enzyme is activated following *in vivo* administration. Depending on the buffering capacity of the acidic buffer, the pH of the interstitium
30 will return to neutrality after a limited or predetermined time, thereby reversing the degradative effects of the matrix-degrading enzyme.

In another example of the methods provided herein, a combination of a anesthetic and vasoconstrictor, for example, lidocaine/epinephrine, is administered prior to administration of the activator and matrix-degrading enzyme. Generally, in

the methods, a dispersing agent, such as hyaluronidase, also is administered together with the anesthetic and vasoconstrictor, such as an alpha adrenergic receptor agonist.

b. Activating Condition – Metal Cation Concentration

Provided herein are composition, combinations, containers and methods
 5 containing activatable matrix-degrading enzymes that require exposure to a suitable metal ion, for example Ca^{2+} , for activation. Exemplary of such an enzyme is calpain (e.g. large subunit set forth in SEQ ID NO:82 (calpain 1) and 85 (calpain2) and small subunit set forth in SEQ ID NO: 87, or allelic or species variants or other variants thereof), which requires Ca^{2+} for activation. The metal ion can be provided in the
 10 form of an aqueous composition, for example, as a calcium salt. The inactive enzyme can be provided as a mixture with a metal ion, or can be provided as a separate composition. If provided as a separate composition, such as in the form of a concentrated liquid composition or in lyophilized or powdered form, addition of the metal ion to the enzyme will result in an activated enzyme.

15 Generally, activation is achieved by exposing an inactive enzyme to a metal cation, for example Ca^{2+} , at a concentration sufficient for activation. Precise amounts can be empirically determined or are known to those of skill in the art. For example, in vitro activation of μ -calpain and m-calpain require 10-50 and 300-500 μM calcium concentrations, respectively (Hosfield *et al.* (1999) The EMBO J., 18:
 20 6880-6889.) Assays for enzymatic activity can be performed to determine optimal concentrations. Typically, for purposes herein, activatable matrix-degrading enzymes include those that require sufficient concentration of a metal ion for activation at a concentration that exceeds the physiological level of metal ion present in the interstitium. For the case of μ -calpain and m-calpain, the calcium levels required for
 25 activation exceed physiological levels (see e.g., U.S. Patent No. 6620592; Hosfield *et al.* (1999) The EMBO J., 18: 6880-6889.)

In general, the inactive enzyme is packaged or provided so that there are insufficient metal ions to trigger enzyme activation. Hence, where the inactive enzyme is provided as a composition separate from the metal ion activator, it might be
 30 necessary to add EDTA or EGTA (concentrations from about 5 to about 100 mM or higher depending on the application) to tie up any Ca^{2+} or other metal ion to prevent triggering the activation reaction until desired. The activation reaction then can be triggered by adding Ca^{2+} (or other metal cation) at a concentration sufficient to overcome the effects of the chelator. Precise amounts can be empirically determined.

Depending on the enzyme, temporary activation can be achieved simply by discontinued exposure to metal ion. For example, sustained activation of calpain requires the presence of calcium. Thus, an inactive form of calpain can be activated by adding Ca^{2+} , and the resulting mixture, either in the same or separate
5 compositions, can be administered to the interstitium of an organ or tissue. Upon administration, however, the effective concentration of calcium required for continued activation is no longer be available; the resulting active enzyme will ultimately return to its inactive state. In other examples, the temporal regulation of an enzyme requiring a metal ion for activation can be controlled by administration of a metal
10 chelator or other reversing agent.

2. Combinations of Matrix-Degrading Enzymes and Activator

Combinations of an activatable matrix-degrading enzyme and activator, sufficient for activation of the matrix-degrading enzyme, are provided herein. For purposes herein, the activatable matrix degrading enzyme is provided in an inactive
15 form. Generally, compositions of the activatable matrix-degrading enzyme can be provided separate from the activator. The compositions can be provided separately in the same container or in separate containers. Generally, when packaged by itself, the enzyme is provided so that there are insufficient activating conditions present to render the enzyme active.

20 The matrix-degrading enzyme can be provided as a liquid or in lyophilized form at a therapeutically effective concentration. Alternatively, the matrix-degrading enzyme can be provided as a concentrated liquid, such that addition of a sufficient amount of activator results in a therapeutically effective concentration of enzyme. The enzymes can be provided as a solution or suspension or encapsulated into a
25 suitable delivery vehicle, such as a liposome, glass particle, capillary tube, drug delivery vehicle, gelatin, tablet, capsule, pill, time release coating, as well as transdermal patch preparation and dry powder inhalers or other such vehicle. The activator typically is provided as a liquid solution or suspension for administration into the interstitium either alone or following reconstitution of and/or exposure to the
30 matrix-degrading enzyme. As described in Section F below, kits containing these combinations and also articles of manufacture, such as containers, also are provided.

Thus, when desired, the activatable matrix-degrading enzyme is subjected to activating conditions in which the enzyme is exposed to an activator to generate an active enzyme. Exposure to an activator can be achieved *in vitro* or *in vivo*. For

example, where an activatable enzyme and activator are separately provided, they can be administered together or separately. Where administered separately, the conditionally activatable matrix-degrading enzyme can be administered simultaneously, subsequently or intermittently from the activator. In another
5 example, the matrix-degrading enzyme, in a lyophilized or concentrated liquid form, can be reconstituted with the activator just prior to use. In such an example, the mixture of the matrix-degrading enzyme and activator are administered together. Such methods of activation can be empirically determined by one of skill in the art, and may differ depending on the choice of enzyme and activator, and the method of
10 treatment and treatment regime desired.

The activatable matrix-degrading enzyme can be provided in an article or manufacture alone or in combination with the activator. For example, if the enzyme is provided in combination with the activator, an article of manufacture can contain an enzyme, either lyophilized or in liquid form, in one compartment, and an activator in
15 an adjacent compartment. The compartments can be separated by a dividing member. Such articles of manufacture are described elsewhere herein.

The combinations of matrix-degrading enzyme and activator also can further contain other agents, discussed in detail below. For example, in addition to the activator and matrix-degrading enzyme, combinations are provided containing one or
20 more of a anesthetic, vasoconstrictor or dispersing agent.

E. Methods of Producing Nucleic Acids Encoding Matrix-Degrading Enzymes and Polypeptides Thereof

Polypeptides of matrix-degrading enzymes set forth herein, can be obtained by methods well known in the art for protein purification and recombinant protein
25 expression. Any method known to those of skill in the art for identification of nucleic acids that encode desired genes can be used. Any method available in the art can be used to obtain a full length (*i.e.*, encompassing the entire coding region) cDNA or genomic DNA clone encoding a desired matrix-degrading enzyme, such as from a cell or tissue source. Modified or variant matrix-degrading enzymes, can be
30 engineered from a wildtype polypeptide, such as by site-directed mutagenesis.

Polypeptides can be cloned or isolated using any available methods known in the art for cloning and isolating nucleic acid molecules. Such methods include PCR amplification of nucleic acids and screening of libraries, including nucleic acid hybridization screening, antibody-based screening and activity-based screening.

Methods for amplification of nucleic acids can be used to isolate nucleic acid molecules encoding a desired polypeptide, including for example, polymerase chain reaction (PCR) methods. A nucleic acid containing material can be used as a starting material from which a desired polypeptide-encoding nucleic acid molecule can be
5 isolated. For example, DNA and mRNA preparations, cell extracts, tissue extracts, fluid samples (*e.g.* blood, serum, saliva), samples from healthy and/or diseased subjects can be used in amplification methods. Nucleic acid libraries also can be used as a source of starting material. Primers can be designed to amplify a desired polypeptide. For example, primers can be designed based on expressed sequences
10 from which a desired polypeptide is generated. Primers can be designed based on back-translation of a polypeptide amino acid sequence. Nucleic acid molecules generated by amplification can be sequenced and confirmed to encode a desired polypeptide.

Additional nucleotide sequences can be joined to a polypeptide-encoding
15 nucleic acid molecule, including linker sequences containing restriction endonuclease sites for the purpose of cloning the synthetic gene into a vector, for example, a protein expression vector or a vector designed for the amplification of the core protein coding DNA sequences. Furthermore, additional nucleotide sequences specifying functional DNA elements can be operatively linked to a polypeptide-encoding nucleic acid
20 molecule. Examples of such sequences include, but are not limited to, promoter sequences designed to facilitate intracellular protein expression, and secretion sequences, for example heterologous signal sequences, designed to facilitate protein secretion. Such sequences are known to those of skill in the art. For example, exemplary heterologous signal sequences include, but are not limited to, human kappa
25 IgG heterologous signal sequence set forth in SEQ ID NO:2. Additional nucleotide residues sequences such as sequences of bases specifying protein binding regions also can be linked to enzyme-encoding nucleic acid molecules. Such regions include, but are not limited to, sequences of residues that facilitate or encode proteins that facilitate uptake of an enzyme into specific target cells, or otherwise alter
30 pharmacokinetics of a product of a synthetic gene. For example, enzymes can be linked to PEG moieties.

In addition, tags or other moieties can be added, for example, to aid in detection or affinity purification of the polypeptide. For example, additional nucleotide residues sequences such as sequences of bases specifying an epitope tag or

other detectable marker also can be linked to enzyme-encoding nucleic acid molecules. Exemplary of such sequences include nucleic acid sequences encoding a His tag (e.g., 6xHis, HHHHH; SEQ ID NO:235) or Flag Tag (DYKDDDDK; SEQ ID NO:236).

5 The identified and isolated nucleic acids can then be inserted into an appropriate cloning vector. A large number of vector-host systems known in the art can be used. Possible vectors include, but are not limited to, plasmids or modified viruses, but the vector system must be compatible with the host cell used. Such vectors include, but are not limited to, bacteriophages such as lambda derivatives, or
10 plasmids such as pCMV4, pBR322 or pUC plasmid derivatives or the Bluescript vector (Stratagene, La Jolla, CA). Other expression vectors include the HZ24 expression vector exemplified herein. The insertion into a cloning vector can, for example, be accomplished by ligating the DNA fragment into a cloning vector which has complementary cohesive termini. Insertion can be effected using TOPO cloning
15 vectors (INVITROGEN, Carlsbad, CA). If the complementary restriction sites used to fragment the DNA are not present in the cloning vector, the ends of the DNA molecules can be enzymatically modified. Alternatively, any site desired can be produced by ligating nucleotide sequences (linkers) onto the DNA termini; these ligated linkers can contain specific chemically synthesized oligonucleotides encoding
20 restriction endonuclease recognition sequences. In an alternative method, the cleaved vector and protein gene can be modified by homopolymeric tailing. Recombinant molecules can be introduced into host cells via, for example, transformation, transfection, infection, electroporation and sonoporation, so that many copies of the gene sequence are generated.

25 In specific embodiments, transformation of host cells with recombinant DNA molecules that incorporate the isolated protein gene, cDNA, or synthesized DNA sequence enables generation of multiple copies of the gene. Thus, the gene can be obtained in large quantities by growing transformants, isolating the recombinant DNA molecules from the transformants and, when necessary, retrieving the inserted gene
30 from the isolated recombinant DNA.

1. Vectors and cells

For recombinant expression of one or more of the desired proteins, such as any described herein, the nucleic acid containing all or a portion of the nucleotide sequence encoding the protein can be inserted into an appropriate expression vector,

i.e., a vector that contains the necessary elements for the transcription and translation of the inserted protein coding sequence. The necessary transcriptional and translational signals also can be supplied by the native promoter for enzyme genes, and/or their flanking regions.

5 Also provided are vectors that contain a nucleic acid encoding the enzyme. Cells containing the vectors also are provided. The cells include eukaryotic and prokaryotic cells, and the vectors are any suitable for use therein.

Prokaryotic and eukaryotic cells, including endothelial cells, containing the vectors are provided. Such cells include bacterial cells, yeast cells, fungal cells,
10 Archaea, plant cells, insect cells and animal cells. The cells are used to produce a protein thereof by growing the above-described cells under conditions whereby the encoded protein is expressed by the cell, and recovering the expressed protein. For purposes herein, for example, the enzyme can be secreted into the medium.

Provided are vectors that contain a sequence of nucleotides that encodes the
15 proenzyme polypeptide coupled to the native or heterologous signal sequence, as well as multiple copies thereof. The vectors can be selected for expression of the enzyme protein in the cell or such that the enzyme protein is expressed as a secreted protein. The proenzyme (*i.e.* zymogen) form of the enzyme can be purified for use as a activatable enzyme herein. Alternatively, upon secretion the prosegment can be
20 cleaved catalytically or autocatalytically to generate a mature enzyme. If necessary, the enzyme can be purified such that the prosegment is removed from the preparation. Such mature forms, if inactive, also can be used herein as activatable enzyme either in a single chain or two-chain form.

A variety of host-vector systems can be used to express the protein coding
25 sequence. These include but are not limited to mammalian cell systems infected with virus (*e.g.* vaccinia virus, adenovirus and other viruses); insect cell systems infected with virus (*e.g.* baculovirus); microorganisms such as yeast containing yeast vectors; or bacteria transformed with bacteriophage, DNA, plasmid DNA, or cosmid DNA. The expression elements of vectors vary in their strengths and specificities.
30 Depending on the host-vector system used, any one of a number of suitable transcription and translation elements can be used.

Any methods known to those of skill in the art for the insertion of DNA fragments into a vector can be used to construct expression vectors containing a chimeric gene containing appropriate transcriptional/translational control signals and

protein coding sequences. These methods can include *in vitro* recombinant DNA and synthetic techniques and *in vivo* recombinants (genetic recombination). Expression of nucleic acid sequences encoding protein, or domains, derivatives, fragments or homologs thereof, can be regulated by a second nucleic acid sequence so that the

5 genes or fragments thereof are expressed in a host transformed with the recombinant DNA molecule(s). For example, expression of the proteins can be controlled by any promoter/enhancer known in the art. In a specific embodiment, the promoter is not native to the genes for a desired protein. Promoters which can be used include but are not limited to the SV40 early promoter (Bernoist and Chambon, *Nature* 290:304-310

10 (1981)), the promoter contained in the 3' long terminal repeat of Rous sarcoma virus (Yamamoto *et al.* *Cell* 22:787-797 (1980)), the herpes thymidine kinase promoter (Wagner *et al.*, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 78:1441-1445 (1981)), the regulatory sequences of the metallothionein gene (Brinster *et al.*, *Nature* 296:39-42 (1982)); prokaryotic expression vectors such as the β -lactamase promoter (Jay *et al.*, (1981)

15 *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 78:5543) or the *tac* promoter (DeBoer *et al.*, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 80:21-25 (1983)); see also "Useful Proteins from Recombinant Bacteria": in *Scientific American* 242:79-94 (1980)); plant expression vectors containing the nopaline synthetase promoter (Herrar-Estrella *et al.*, *Nature* 303:209-213 (1984)) or the cauliflower mosaic virus 35S RNA promoter (Gardner *et al.*,

20 *Nucleic Acids Res.* 9:2871 (1981)), and the promoter of the photosynthetic enzyme ribulose biphosphate carboxylase (Herrera-Estrella *et al.*, *Nature* 310:115-120 (1984)); promoter elements from yeast and other fungi such as the Gal4 promoter, the alcohol dehydrogenase promoter, the phosphoglycerol kinase promoter, the alkaline phosphatase promoter, and the following animal transcriptional control regions that

25 exhibit tissue specificity and have been used in transgenic animals: elastase I gene control region which is active in pancreatic acinar cells (Swift *et al.*, *Cell* 38:639-646 (1984); Ornitz *et al.*, *Cold Spring Harbor Symp. Quant. Biol.* 50:399-409 (1986); MacDonald, *Hepatology* 7:425-515 (1987)); insulin gene control region which is active in pancreatic beta cells (Hanahan *et al.*, *Nature* 315:115-122 (1985)),

30 immunoglobulin gene control region which is active in lymphoid cells (Grosschedl *et al.*, *Cell* 38:647-658 (1984); Adams *et al.*, *Nature* 318:533-538 (1985); Alexander *et al.*, *Mol. Cell Biol.* 7:1436-1444 (1987)), mouse mammary tumor virus control region which is active in testicular, breast, lymphoid and mast cells (Leder *et al.*, *Cell*

45:485-495 (1986)), albumin gene control region which is active in liver (Pinckert *et al.*, *Genes and Devel.* 1:268-276 (1987)), alpha-fetoprotein gene control region which is active in liver (Krumlauf *et al.*, *Mol. Cell. Biol.* 5:1639-1648 (1985); Hammer *et al.*, *Science* 235:53-58 (1987)), alpha-1 antitrypsin gene control region which is active
 5 in liver (Kelsey *et al.*, *Genes and Devel.* 1:161-171 (1987)), beta globin gene control region which is active in myeloid cells (Mogam *et al.*, *Nature* 315:338-340 (1985); Kollias *et al.*, *Cell* 46:89-94 (1986)), myelin basic protein gene control region which is active in oligodendrocyte cells of the brain (Readhead *et al.*, *Cell* 48:703-712 (1987)), myosin light chain-2 gene control region which is active in skeletal muscle
 10 (Sani, *Nature* 314:283-286 (1985)), and gonadotrophic releasing hormone gene control region which is active in gonadotrophs of the hypothalamus (Mason *et al.*, *Science* 234:1372-1378 (1986)).

In a specific embodiment, a vector is used that contains a promoter operably linked to nucleic acids encoding a desired protein, or a domain, fragment, derivative
 15 or homolog, thereof, one or more origins of replication, and optionally, one or more selectable markers (*e.g.*, an antibiotic resistance gene). Exemplary plasmid vectors for transformation of *E. coli* cells, include, for example, the pQE expression vectors (available from Qiagen, Valencia, CA; see also literature published by Qiagen describing the system). pQE vectors have a phage T5 promoter (recognized by *E. coli*
 20 RNA polymerase) and a double lac operator repression module to provide tightly regulated, high-level expression of recombinant proteins in *E. coli*, a synthetic ribosomal binding site (RBS II) for efficient translation, a 6XHis tag coding sequence, *t*₀ and T1 transcriptional terminators, ColE1 origin of replication, and a beta-lactamase gene for conferring ampicillin resistance. The pQE vectors enable
 25 placement of a 6xHis tag at either the N- or C-terminus of the recombinant protein. Such plasmids include pQE 32, pQE 30, and pQE 31 which provide multiple cloning sites for all three reading frames and provide for the expression of N-terminally 6xHis-tagged proteins. Other exemplary plasmid vectors for transformation of *E. coli* cells, include, for example, the pET expression vectors (see, U.S. patent 4,952,496;
 30 available from NOVAGEN, Madison, WI; see, also literature published by Novagen describing the system). Such plasmids include pET 11a, which contains the T7lac promoter, T7 terminator, the inducible *E. coli* lac operator, and the lac repressor gene; pET 12a-c, which contains the T7 promoter, T7 terminator, and the *E. coli* ompT secretion signal; and pET 15b and pET19b (NOVAGEN, Madison, WI), which

contain a His-TagTM leader sequence for use in purification with a His column and a thrombin cleavage site that permits cleavage following purification over the column, the T7-lac promoter region and the T7 terminator.

Exemplary of a vector for mammalian cell expression is the HZ24 expression
5 vector. The HZ24 expression vector was derived from the pCI vector backbone
(Promega). It contains DNA encoding the Beta-lactamase resistance gene (AmpR),
an F1 origin of replication, a Cytomegalovirus immediate-early enhancer/promoter
region (CMV), and an SV40 late polyadenylation signal (SV40). The expression
vector also has an internal ribosome entry site (IRES) from the ECMV virus
10 (Clontech) and the mouse dihydrofolate reductase (DHFR) gene.

2. Expression

Matrix-degrading enzymes can be produced by any method known to those of
skill in the art including *in vivo* and *in vitro* methods. Desired proteins can be
expressed in any organism suitable to produce the required amounts and forms of the
15 proteins, such as for example, needed for administration and treatment. Expression
hosts include prokaryotic and eukaryotic organisms such as *E.coli*, yeast, plants,
insect cells, mammalian cells, including human cell lines and transgenic animals.
Expression hosts can differ in their protein production levels as well as the types of
post-translational modifications that are present on the expressed proteins. The choice
20 of expression host can be made based on these and other factors, such as regulatory
and safety considerations, production costs and the need and methods for purification.

Many expression vectors are available and known to those of skill in the art
and can be used for expression of proteins. The choice of expression vector will be
influenced by the choice of host expression system. In general, expression vectors can
25 include transcriptional promoters and optionally enhancers, translational signals, and
transcriptional and translational termination signals. Expression vectors that are used
for stable transformation typically have a selectable marker which allows selection
and maintenance of the transformed cells. In some cases, an origin of replication can
be used to amplify the copy number of the vector.

30 Matrix-degrading enzymes also can be utilized or expressed as protein fusions.
For example, an enzyme fusion can be generated to add additional functionality to an
enzyme. Examples of enzyme fusion proteins include, but are not limited to, fusions
of a signal sequence, a tag such as for localization, *e.g.* a his₆ tag or a myc tag, or a tag

for purification, for example, a GST fusion, and a sequence for directing protein secretion and/or membrane association.

Generally, matrix-degrading enzymes are expressed in an inactive zymogen form. Zymogen conversion can be achieved by exposure to other proteases or to autocatalysis to generate a mature enzyme. Any form of an enzyme is contemplated herein, so long as it is inactive in the absence of an activator.

a. Prokaryotic Cells

Prokaryotes, especially *E.coli*, provide a system for producing large amounts of proteins. Transformation of *E.coli* is simple and rapid technique well known to those of skill in the art. Expression vectors for *E.coli* can contain inducible promoters, such promoters are useful for inducing high levels of protein expression and for expressing proteins that exhibit some toxicity to the host cells. Examples of inducible promoters include the lac promoter, the trp promoter, the hybrid tac promoter, the T7 and SP6 RNA promoters and the temperature regulated λ PL promoter.

Proteins, such as any provided herein, can be expressed in the cytoplasmic environment of *E.coli*. The cytoplasm is a reducing environment and for some molecules, this can result in the formation of insoluble inclusion bodies. Reducing agents such as dithiothreitol and β -mercaptoethanol and denaturants, such as guanidine-HCl and urea can be used to resolubilize the proteins. An alternative approach is the expression of proteins in the periplasmic space of bacteria which provides an oxidizing environment and chaperonin-like and disulfide isomerases and can lead to the production of soluble protein. Typically, a leader sequence is fused to the protein to be expressed which directs the protein to the periplasm. The leader is then removed by signal peptidases inside the periplasm. Examples of periplasmic-targeting leader sequences include the pelB leader from the pectate lyase gene and the leader derived from the alkaline phosphatase gene. In some cases, periplasmic expression allows leakage of the expressed protein into the culture medium. The secretion of proteins allows quick and simple purification from the culture supernatant. Proteins that are not secreted can be obtained from the periplasm by osmotic lysis. Similar to cytoplasmic expression, in some cases proteins can become insoluble and denaturants and reducing agents can be used to facilitate solubilization and refolding. Temperature of induction and growth also can influence expression levels and solubility, typically temperatures between 25°C and 37°C are used.

Typically, bacteria produce aglycosylated proteins. Thus, if proteins require glycosylation for function, glycosylation can be added *in vitro* after purification from host cells.

b. Yeast Cells

5 Yeasts such as *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*, *Schizosaccharomyces pombe*,
Yarrowia lipolytica, *Kluyveromyces lactis* and *Pichia pastoris* are well known yeast
expression hosts that can be used for production of proteins, such as any described
herein. Yeast can be transformed with episomal replicating vectors or by stable
chromosomal integration by homologous recombination. Typically, inducible
10 promoters are used to regulate gene expression. Examples of such promoters include
GAL1, GAL7 and GAL5 and metallothionein promoters, such as CUP1, AOX1 or
other *Pichia* or other yeast promoter. Expression vectors often include a selectable
marker such as LEU2, TRP1, HIS3 and URA3 for selection and maintenance of the
transformed DNA. Proteins expressed in yeast are often soluble. Co-expression with
15 chaperonins such as Bip and protein disulfide isomerase can improve expression
levels and solubility. Additionally, proteins expressed in yeast can be directed for
secretion using secretion signal peptide fusions such as the yeast mating type alpha-
factor secretion signal from *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* and fusions with yeast cell
surface proteins such as the Aga2p mating adhesion receptor or the *Arxula*
20 *adenivorans* glucoamylase. A protease cleavage site such as for the Kex-2 protease,
can be engineered to remove the fused sequences from the expressed polypeptides as
they exit the secretion pathway. Yeast also is capable of glycosylation at Asn-X-
Ser/Thr motifs.

c. Insect Cells

25 Insect cells, particularly using baculovirus expression, are useful for
expressing polypeptides such as matrix-degrading enzymes. Insect cells express high
levels of protein and are capable of most of the post-translational modifications used
by higher eukaryotes. Baculovirus have a restrictive host range which improves the
safety and reduces regulatory concerns of eukaryotic expression. Typical expression
30 vectors use a promoter for high level expression such as the polyhedrin promoter of
baculovirus. Commonly used baculovirus systems include the baculoviruses such as
Autographa californica nuclear polyhedrosis virus (AcNPV), and the *bombyx mori*
nuclear polyhedrosis virus (BmNPV) and an insect cell line such as Sf9 derived from
Spodoptera frugiperda, *Pseudaletia unipuncta* (A7S) and *Danaus plexippus* (DpN1).

For high-level expression, the nucleotide sequence of the molecule to be expressed is fused immediately downstream of the polyhedrin initiation codon of the virus.

Mammalian secretion signals are accurately processed in insect cells and can be used to secrete the expressed protein into the culture medium. In addition, the cell lines
 5 *Pseudaletia unipuncta* (A7S) and *Danaus plexippus* (DpN1) produce proteins with glycosylation patterns similar to mammalian cell systems.

An alternative expression system in insect cells is the use of stably transformed cells. Cell lines such as the Schnieder 2 (S2) and Kc cells (*Drosophila melanogaster*) and C7 cells (*Aedes albopictus*) can be used for expression. The
 10 *Drosophila* metallothionein promoter can be used to induce high levels of expression in the presence of heavy metal induction with cadmium or copper. Expression vectors are typically maintained by the use of selectable markers such as neomycin and hygromycin.

d. Mammalian Cells

15 Mammalian expression systems can be used to express proteins including matrix-degrading enzymes. Expression constructs can be transferred to mammalian cells by viral infection such as adenovirus or by direct DNA transfer such as liposomes, calcium phosphate, DEAE-dextran and by physical means such as electroporation and microinjection. Expression vectors for mammalian cells typically
 20 include an mRNA cap site, a TATA box, a translational initiation sequence (Kozak consensus sequence) and polyadenylation elements. IRES elements also can be added to permit bicistronic expression with another gene, such as a selectable marker. Such vectors often include transcriptional promoter-enhancers for high-level expression, for example the SV40 promoter-enhancer, the human cytomegalovirus (CMV) promoter
 25 and the long terminal repeat of Rous sarcoma virus (RSV). These promoter-enhancers are active in many cell types. Tissue and cell-type promoters and enhancer regions also can be used for expression. Exemplary promoter/enhancer regions include, but are not limited to, those from genes such as elastase I, insulin, immunoglobulin, mouse mammary tumor virus, albumin, alpha fetoprotein, alpha 1
 30 antitrypsin, beta globin, myelin basic protein, myosin light chain 2, and gonadotropic releasing hormone gene control. Selectable markers can be used to select for and maintain cells with the expression construct. Examples of selectable marker genes include, but are not limited to, hygromycin B phosphotransferase, adenosine deaminase, xanthine-guanine phosphoribosyl transferase, aminoglycoside

phosphotransferase, dihydrofolate reductase (DHFR) and thymidine kinase. For example, expression can be performed in the presence of methotrexate to select for only those cells expressing the DHFR gene. Fusion with cell surface signaling molecules such as TCR- ζ and Fc ϵ RI- γ can direct expression of the proteins in an active state on the cell surface.

Many cell lines are available for mammalian expression including mouse, rat human, monkey, chicken and hamster cells. Exemplary cell lines include but are not limited to CHO, Balb/3T3, HeLa, MT2, mouse NS0 (nonsecreting) and other myeloma cell lines, hybridoma and heterohybridoma cell lines, lymphocytes, fibroblasts, Sp2/0, COS, NIH3T3, HEK293, 293S, 2B8, and HKB cells. Cell lines also are available adapted to serum-free media which facilitates purification of secreted proteins from the cell culture media. Examples include CHO-S cells (Invitrogen, Carlsbad, CA, cat # 11619-012) and the serum free EBNA-1 cell line (Pham *et al.*, (2003) *Biotechnol. Bioeng.* 84:332-42.). Cell lines also are available that are adapted to grow in special mediums optimized for maximal expression. For example, DG44 CHO cells are adapted to grow in suspension culture in a chemically defined, animal product-free medium.

e. Plants

Transgenic plant cells and plants can be used to express proteins such as any described herein. Expression constructs are typically transferred to plants using direct DNA transfer such as microprojectile bombardment and PEG-mediated transfer into protoplasts, and with agrobacterium-mediated transformation. Expression vectors can include promoter and enhancer sequences, transcriptional termination elements and translational control elements. Expression vectors and transformation techniques are usually divided between dicot hosts, such as *Arabidopsis* and tobacco, and monocot hosts, such as corn and rice. Examples of plant promoters used for expression include the cauliflower mosaic virus promoter, the nopaline synthase promoter, the ribose biphosphate carboxylase promoter and the ubiquitin and UBQ3 promoters. Selectable markers such as hygromycin, phosphomannose isomerase and neomycin phosphotransferase are often used to facilitate selection and maintenance of transformed cells. Transformed plant cells can be maintained in culture as cells, aggregates (callus tissue) or regenerated into whole plants. Transgenic plant cells also can include algae engineered to produce matrix-degrading enzymes. Because plants

have different glycosylation patterns than mammalian cells, this can influence the choice of protein produced in these hosts.

3. Purification Techniques

Method for purification of polypeptides, including matrix-degrading enzymes or other proteins, from host cells will depend on the chosen host cells and expression systems. For secreted molecules, proteins are generally purified from the culture media after removing the cells. For intracellular expression, cells can be lysed and the proteins purified from the extract. When transgenic organisms such as transgenic plants and animals are used for expression, tissues or organs can be used as starting material to make a lysed cell extract. Additionally, transgenic animal production can include the production of polypeptides in milk or eggs, which can be collected, and if necessary, the proteins can be extracted and further purified using standard methods in the art.

Generally, matrix-degrading enzymes are expressed and purified to be in an inactive form (zymogen form) for subsequent activation as described in the systems and methods provided herein. In some applications, matrix-degrading enzymes are inactive in their mature form in the absence of an activator as described herein. Hence, following expression, mature forms can be generated by autocatalysis to remove the prosegment. For many enzymes, the autocatalysis requires the presence of the activator. If necessary, additional purification steps can be performed to remove the prosegment from the purified preparation. In some circumstances, such as for use as controls, expressed matrix-degrading enzymes can be purified into an active form, by autocatalysis to remove the prosegment or by addition of an activator. In such examples, autoactivation can occur during the purification process, or by incubating at room temperature for 24-72 hours. The rate and degree of activation is dependent on protein concentration and the specific enzyme, such that for example, a more dilute sample may need to be incubated at room temperature for a longer period of time. Activation can be monitored by SDS-PAGE (*e.g.*, a 3 kilodalton shift) and by enzyme activity (cleavage of a fluorogenic substrate). Where an active enzyme is desired, typically, an enzyme is allowed to achieve >75% activation before purification.

Proteins, such as matrix-degrading enzymes, can be purified using standard protein purification techniques known in the art including but not limited to, SDS-PAGE, size fraction and size exclusion chromatography, ammonium sulfate

precipitation and ionic exchange chromatography, such as anion exchange. Affinity purification techniques also can be utilized to improve the efficiency and purity of the preparations. For example, antibodies, receptors and other molecules that bind matrix-degrading enzymes can be used in affinity purification. Expression constructs
5 also can be engineered to add an affinity tag to a protein such as a myc epitope, GST fusion or His₆ and affinity purified with myc antibody, glutathione resin and Ni-resin, respectively. Purity can be assessed by any method known in the art including gel electrophoresis and staining and spectrophotometric techniques.

10 **F. Preparation, Formulation and Administration Of Activatable Matrix-Degrading Enzymes**

The pharmaceutical compositions provided herein contain activatable matrix-degrading enzymes provided in an inactive form. Also provided are compositions containing an activator. The compounds can be formulated into suitable pharmaceutical preparations such as solutions, suspensions, tablets, dispersible
15 tablets, pills, capsules, powders, sustained release formulations or elixirs, for oral administration, as well as transdermal patch preparation and dry powder inhalers. Typically, the compounds are formulated into pharmaceutical compositions using techniques and procedures well known in the art (see e.g., Ansel *Introduction to Pharmaceutical Dosage Forms*, Fourth Edition, 1985, 126).

20 A selected matrix-degrading enzyme is included in an amount sufficient that, when activated, exert a therapeutically useful effect in the absence of undesirable side effects on the patient treated. The composition containing the activatable matrix-degrading enzyme can include a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier. Therapeutically effective concentration can be determined empirically by testing the compounds in
25 known *in vitro* and *in vivo* systems, such as the assays provided herein. The concentration of a selected matrix-degrading enzyme in the composition depends on absorption, inactivation and excretion rates of the complex, the physicochemical characteristics of the complex, the dosage schedule, and amount administered as well as other factors known to those of skill in the art. For example, it is understood that
30 the precise dosage and duration of treatment is a function of the tissue being treated and may be determined empirically using known testing protocols or by extrapolation from *in vivo* or *in vitro* test data. It is to be noted that concentrations and dosage values may also vary with the age of the individual treated. It is to be further understood that for any particular subject, specific dosage regimens should be

adjusted over time according to the individual need and the professional judgment of the person administering or supervising the administration of the formulations, and that the concentration ranges set forth herein are exemplary only and are not intended to limit the scope thereof. The amount of a selected matrix-degrading enzyme to be administered for the treatment of a disease or condition, for example an ECM-mediated disease or condition such as cellulite or lymphedema, can be determined by standard clinical techniques. In addition, *in vitro* assays and animal models can be employed to help identify optimal dosage ranges. The precise dosage, which can be determined empirically, can depend on the particular enzyme, the route of administration, the type of disease to be treated and the seriousness of the disease. Exemplary dosages range from or about 10 µg to 100 mg, particularly 50 µg to 75 mg, 100 µg to 50 mg, 250 µg to 25 mg, 500 µg to 10 mg, 1 mg to 5 mg, or 2 mg to 4 mg. The particular dosage and formulation thereof depends upon upon the indication and individual. If necessary dosage can be empirically determined. Typically the dosage is administered for indications described herein in a volume of 1 -100 ml, particularly, 1 -50 ml, 10- 50 ml, 10-30 ml, 1-20 ml, or 1-10 ml volumes following reconstitution, such as by addition of an activator. Typically, such dosages are from at or about 100 µg to 50 mg, generally 1 mg to 5 mg, in a 10 – 50 ml final volume.

A selected activator typically is provided as a buffered solution in an amount that, when exposed to the matrix-degrading enzyme, activates the matrix-degrading enzyme. Typically, the amount of activator in the buffer is one that temporarily alters the physiological amounts of that activator present in the interstitium to a level sufficient to temporarily activate the selected activatable matrix-degrading enzyme. For example, where acidic pH is the activating condition, the activator in the form of an acidic buffer composition contains at least one acid, that when administered to the ECM, together or separate from the matrix-degrading enzyme, temporarily lowers the pH of the ECM below physiological pH, i.e. below neutrality. As described elsewhere herein, the acidic buffer is one that has an effective pH range within the pH optima of the selected enzyme. Neutralization of the acidic buffer will occur upon administration due to the neutral pH environment of the interstitium, and is a function of the buffering capacity. Other buffered solutions also are contemplated herein depending on the selected activatable matrix-degrading enzyme and activator chosen. For example, buffers can be prepared at varying temperatures, or with varying amounts of salt or metal ions. The buffered activator solution containing the low pH

activating condition also can contain a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier or excipient.

5 A matrix degrading enzyme can be administered at once, or can be divided into a number of smaller doses to be administered at intervals of time. Selected matrix-degrading enzymes can be administered in one or more doses over the course of a treatment time for example over several hours, days, weeks, or months. In some cases, continuous administration is useful. It is understood that the precise dosage and course of administration depends on the methods and system of activation contemplated. For example, the matrix degrading enzyme can be administered
10 together or separate from the activator. Typically, if administered together, the activator is exposed to the matrix-degrading enzyme just prior to use, for example, by reconstitution of a lyophilized powder. If administered separately, the matrix-degrading enzyme composition can be administered sequentially, simultaneously or intermittently from the activator preparation.

15 Also, it is understood that the precise dosage and duration of treatment is a function of the disease being treated and can be determined empirically using known testing protocols or by extrapolation from *in vivo* or *in vitro* test data. It is to be noted that concentrations and dosage values also can vary with the severity of the condition to be alleviated. It is to be further understood that for any particular subject, specific
20 dosage regimens should be adjusted over time according to the individual need and the professional judgment of the person administering or supervising the administration of the compositions, and that the concentration ranges set forth herein are exemplary only and are not intended to limit the scope or use of compositions and combinations containing them. The compositions can be administered hourly, daily,
25 weekly, monthly, yearly or once. Generally, dosage regimens are chosen to limit toxicity. It should be noted that the attending physician would know how to and when to terminate, interrupt or adjust therapy to lower dosage due to toxicity, or bone marrow, liver or kidney or other tissue dysfunctions. Conversely, the attending physician would also know how to and when to adjust treatment to higher levels if the
30 clinical response is not adequate (precluding toxic side effects).

Pharmaceutically acceptable compositions are prepared in view of approvals for a regulatory agency or other agency prepared in accordance with generally recognized pharmacopeia for use in animals and in humans. Compositions can take the form of solutions, suspensions, emulsion, tablets, pills, capsules, powders, and

sustained release formulations. A composition can be formulated as a suppository, with traditional binders and carriers such as triglycerides. Oral formulation can include standard carriers such as pharmaceutical grades of mannitol, lactose, starch, magnesium stearate, sodium saccharine, cellulose, magnesium carbonate, and other
5 such agents. The formulation should suit the mode of administration.

Pharmaceutical compositions can include carriers such as a diluent, adjuvant, excipient, or vehicle with which an enzyme or activator is administered. Examples of suitable pharmaceutical carriers are described in "Remington's Pharmaceutical Sciences" by E. W. Martin. Such compositions will contain a therapeutically effective
10 amount of the compound, generally in purified form, together with a suitable amount of carrier so as to provide the form for proper administration to the patient. Such pharmaceutical carriers can be sterile liquids, such as water and oils, including those of petroleum, animal, vegetable or synthetic origin, such as peanut oil, soybean oil, mineral oil, and sesame oil. Water is a typical carrier when the pharmaceutical
15 composition is administered intravenously. Saline solutions and aqueous dextrose and glycerol solutions also can be employed as liquid carriers, particularly for injectable solutions. Compositions can contain along with an active ingredient: a diluent such as lactose, sucrose, dicalcium phosphate, or carboxymethylcellulose; a lubricant, such as magnesium stearate, calcium stearate and talc; and a binder such as
20 starch, natural gums, such as gum acaciagelatin, glucose, molasses, polvinylpyrrolidone, celluloses and derivatives thereof, povidone, crospovidones and other such binders known to those of skill in the art. Suitable pharmaceutical excipients include starch, glucose, lactose, sucrose, gelatin, malt, rice, flour, chalk, silica gel, sodium stearate, glycerol monostearate, talc, sodium chloride, dried skim
25 milk, glycerol, propylene, glycol, water, and ethanol. A composition, if desired, also can contain minor amounts of wetting or emulsifying agents, or pH buffering agents, for example, acetate, sodium citrate, cyclodextrine derivatives, sorbitan monolaurate, triethanolamine sodium acetate, triethanolamine oleate, and other such agents. As noted, for purposes herein, acidic buffering agents can be provided as activators,
30 which generally are provided in combinations separate from the matrix-degrading enzyme until use.

Formulations are provided for administration to humans and animals in unit dosage forms, such as tablets, capsules, pills, powders, granules, sterile parenteral solutions or suspensions, and oral solutions or suspensions, and oil water emulsions

containing suitable quantities of the compounds or pharmaceutically acceptable derivatives thereof. Pharmaceutically therapeutically active compounds and derivatives thereof are typically formulated and administered in unit dosage forms or multiple dosage forms. Each unit dose contains a predetermined quantity of

5 therapeutically active compound sufficient to produce the desired therapeutic effect, in association with the required pharmaceutical carrier, vehicle or diluent. Examples of unit dose forms include ampoules and syringes and individually packaged tablets or capsules. Unit dose forms can be administered in fractions or multiples thereof. A multiple dose form is a plurality of identical unit dosage forms packaged in a single

10 container to be administered in segregated unit dose form. Examples of multiple dose forms include vials, bottles of tablets or capsules or bottles of pints or gallons. Hence, multiple dose form is a multiple of unit doses that are not segregated in packaging. Generally, dosage forms or compositions containing active ingredient in the range of 0.005% to 100% with the balance made up from non-toxic carrier can be prepared.

15 Compositions can be formulated for administration by any route known to those of skill in the art including intramuscular, intravenous, intradermal, intralesional, intraperitoneal injection, subcutaneous, epidural, nasal, oral, vaginal, rectal, topical, local, , otic, inhalational, buccal (*e.g.*, sublingual), and transdermal administration or any route. Administration can be local, topical or systemic

20 depending upon the locus of treatment. Local administration to an area in need of treatment can be achieved by, for example, but not limited to, local infusion during surgery, topical application, *e.g.*, in conjunction with a wound dressing after surgery, by injection, by means of a catheter, by means of a suppository, or by means of an implant. Compositions also can be administered with other biologically active agents,

25 either sequentially, intermittently or in the same composition. Administration also can include controlled release systems including controlled release formulations and device controlled release, such as by means of a pump.

The most suitable route in any given case depends on a variety of factors, such as the nature of the disease, the progress of the disease, the severity of the disease the particular composition which is used. For purposes herein, it is desired that matrix-degrading enzymes and activator are administered so that they reach the interstitium of skin or tissues. Thus, direct administration under the skin, such as by sub-

30 epidermal administration methods, is contemplated. These include, for example, subcutaneous, intradermal and intramuscular routes of administration. Thus, in one

example, local administration can be achieved by injection, such as from a syringe or other article of manufacture containing a injection device such as a needle. Other modes of administration also are contemplated. Pharmaceutical composition can be formulated in dosage forms appropriate for each route of administration.

5 In one example, pharmaceutical preparation can be in liquid form, for example, solutions, syrups or suspensions. If provided in liquid form, the pharmaceutical preparation of an activatable matrix-degrading enzyme can be provided as a concentrated preparation to be diluted to a therapeutically effective concentration upon addition of the activator. The activator can be added to the
10 preparation prior to administration, or the activator can be added simultaneously, intermittently or sequentially with the matrix-degrading enzyme preparation. Such liquid preparations can be prepared by conventional means with pharmaceutically acceptable additives such as suspending agents (*e.g.*, sorbitol syrup, cellulose derivatives or hydrogenated edible fats); emulsifying agents (*e.g.*, lecithin or acacia);
15 non-aqueous vehicles (*e.g.*, almond oil, oily esters, or fractionated vegetable oils); and preservatives (*e.g.*, methyl or propyl-p-hydroxybenzoates or sorbic acid).

 In another example, pharmaceutical preparations can be presented in lyophilized form for reconstitution with water or other suitable vehicle before use. For example, the pharmaceutical preparations of matrix-degrading enzymes can be
20 reconstituted with a solution containing an appropriate activator. Reconstitution of the preparation yields a mixture containing a therapeutically effective amount of matrix-degrading enzyme in a suitable activator, that can be administered together using any desired route of administration.

 Administration methods can be employed to decrease the exposure of selected
25 matrix-degrading enzymes to degradative processes, such as proteolytic degradation and immunological intervention via antigenic and immunogenic responses. Examples of such methods include local administration at the site of treatment. Pegylation of therapeutics has been reported to increase resistance to proteolysis, increase plasma half-life, and decrease antigenicity and immunogenicity. Examples of pegylation
30 methodologies are known in the art (see for example, Lu and Felix, *Int. J. Peptide Protein Res.*, 43: 127-138, 1994; Lu and Felix, *Peptide Res.*, 6: 142-6, 1993; Felix *et al.*, *Int. J. Peptide Res.*, 46 : 253-64, 1995; Benhar *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.*, 269: 13398-404, 1994; Brumeanu *et al.*, *J Immunol.*, 154: 3088-95, 1995; see also, Caliceti *et al.* (2003) *Adv. Drug Deliv. Rev.* 55(10):1261-77 and Molineux (2003) *Pharmacotherapy*

23 (8 Pt 2):3S-8S). Pegylation also can be used in the delivery of nucleic acid molecules *in vivo*. For example, pegylation of adenovirus can increase stability and gene transfer (see, e.g., Cheng *et al.* (2003) *Pharm. Res.* 20(9): 1444-51).

1. **Injectables, solutions and emulsions**

5 Parenteral administration, generally characterized by injection, either subcutaneously, intramuscularly or intradermally is contemplated herein. Injectables can be prepared in conventional forms, either as liquid solutions or suspensions, solid forms suitable for solution or suspension in liquid prior to injection, or as emulsions. Suitable excipients are, for example, water, saline, dextrose, glycerol or ethanol. In
10 addition, if desired, the pharmaceutical compositions to be administered may also contain an activator in the form of a solvent such as pH buffering agents, metal ion salts, or other such buffers. The pharmaceutical compositions also may contain other minor amounts of non-toxic auxiliary substances such as wetting or emulsifying agents, pH buffering agents, stabilizers, solubility enhancers, and other such agents,
15 such as for example, sodium acetate, sorbitan monolaurate, triethanolamine oleate and cyclodextrins. Implantation of a slow-release or sustained-release system, such that a constant level of dosage is maintained (see, e. g., U. S. Patent No. 3,710,795) is also contemplated herein. The percentage of active compound contained in such parenteral compositions is highly dependent on the specific nature thereof, as well as the activity
20 of the compound and the needs of the subject.

 Parenteral administration of the compositions generally includes sub-epidermal routes of administration such as intradermal, subcutaneous and intramuscular administrations. If desired, intravenous administration also is contemplated. Injectables are designed for local and systemic administration. For
25 purposes herein, local administration is desired for direct administration to the affected interstitium. Preparations for parenteral administration include sterile solutions ready for injection, sterile dry soluble products, such as lyophilized powders, ready to be combined with a solvent just prior to use, including hypodermic tablets, sterile suspensions ready for injection, sterile dry insoluble products ready to
30 be combined with a vehicle just prior to use and sterile emulsions. The solutions may be either aqueous or nonaqueous. If administered intravenously, suitable carriers include physiological saline or phosphate buffered saline (PBS), and solutions containing thickening and solubilizing agents, such as glucose, polyethylene glycol, and polypropylene glycol and mixtures thereof.

Pharmaceutically acceptable carriers used in parenteral preparations include aqueous vehicles, nonaqueous vehicles, antimicrobial agents, isotonic agents, buffers, antioxidants, local anesthetics, suspending and dispersing agents, emulsifying agents, sequestering or chelating agents and other pharmaceutically acceptable substances.

- 5 Examples of aqueous vehicles include Sodium Chloride Injection, Ringers Injection, Isotonic Dextrose Injection, Sterile Water Injection, Dextrose and Lactated Ringers Injection. Nonaqueous parenteral vehicles include fixed oils of vegetable origin, cottonseed oil, corn oil, sesame oil and peanut oil. Antimicrobial agents in bacteriostatic or fungistatic concentrations can be added to parenteral preparations
- 10 packaged in multiple-dose containers, which include phenols or cresols, mercurials, benzyl alcohol, chlorobutanol, methyl and propyl p-hydroxybenzoic acid esters, thimerosal, benzalkonium chloride and benzethonium chloride. Isotonic agents include sodium chloride and dextrose. Buffers include phosphate and citrate. Antioxidants include sodium bisulfate. Local anesthetics include procaine
- 15 hydrochloride. Suspending and dispersing agents include sodium carboxymethylcellulose, hydroxypropyl methylcellulose and polyvinylpyrrolidone. Emulsifying agents include Polysorbate 80 (TWEENS 80). A sequestering or chelating agent of metal ions include EDTA. Pharmaceutical carriers also include ethyl alcohol, polyethylene glycol and propylene glycol for water miscible vehicles and
- 20 sodium hydroxide, hydrochloric acid, citric acid or lactic acid for pH adjustment.

- The concentration of the pharmaceutically active compound is adjusted so that an injection provides an effective amount to produce the desired pharmacological effect. The exact dose depends on the age, weight and condition of the patient or animal as is known in the art. The unit-dose parenteral preparations are packaged in
- 25 an ampoule, a vial or a syringe with a needle. The volume of liquid solution or reconstituted powder preparation, containing the pharmaceutically active compound, is a function of the disease to be treated and the particular article of manufacture chosen for package. For example, for the treatment of cellulite, it is contemplated that for parenteral injection the injected volume is or is about 10 to 50 milliliters.
- 30 Generally, this volume represents the volume of activator and matrix-degrading enzyme where the two are administered together. Thus, in one example, a dual container syringe is provided containing a lyophilized enzyme preparation separated from a second compartment containing 10 to 50 milliliters of activator. Following reconstitution of the enzyme with the activator, the mixture can be administered. All

preparations for parenteral administration must be sterile, as is known and practiced in the art.

Lyophilized powders

Of interest herein are lyophilized powders, which can be reconstituted for
5 administration as solutions, emulsions and other mixtures. They may also be reconstituted and formulated as solids or gels.

The sterile, lyophilized powder is prepared by dissolving a compound of inactive enzyme in a buffer solution. The buffer solution may contain an excipient which improves the stability or other pharmacological component of the powder or
10 reconstituted solution, prepared from the powder. Subsequent sterile filtration of the solution followed by lyophilization under standard conditions known to those of skill in the art provides the desired formulation. Briefly, the lyophilized powder is prepared by dissolving an excipient, such as dextrose, sorbital, fructose, corn syrup, xylitol, glycerin, glucose, sucrose or other suitable agent, in a suitable buffer, such as citrate,
15 sodium or potassium phosphate or other such buffer known to those of skill in the art. Then, a selected enzyme is added to the resulting mixture, and stirred until it dissolves. The resulting mixture is sterile filtered or treated to remove particulates and to insure sterility, and apportioned into vials for lyophilization. Each vial will contain a single dosage (1 mg – 1 g, generally 1-100 mg, such as 1-5 mg) or multiple dosages
20 of the compound. The lyophilized powder can be stored under appropriate conditions, such as at about 4 °C to room temperature.

Reconstitution of this lyophilized powder with a buffer solution provides a formulation for use in parenteral administration. The solution chosen for reconstitution can be any buffer, but typically is a buffer containing the activator. The
25 activator is chosen as a function of the enzyme to be reconstituted. For example, a lyophilized preparation of cathepsin L is reconstituted with an acidic buffer at about pH 5.5. For reconstitution about 1 µg -20 mg, preferably 10 µg- 1 mg, more preferably about 100 µg is added per mL of buffer or other suitable carrier. The precise amount depends upon the indication treated and selected compound. Such
30 amount can be empirically determined.

2. Topical administration

Topical mixtures are prepared as described for the local and systemic administration. The resulting mixture may be a solution, suspension, emulsions or the like and are formulated as creams, gels, ointments, emulsions, solutions, elixirs,

lotions, suspensions, tinctures, pastes, foams, aerosols, irrigations, sprays, suppositories, bandages, dermal patches or any other formulations suitable for topical administration.

5 The compounds or pharmaceutically acceptable derivatives thereof may be formulated as aerosols for topical application, such as by inhalation (see, e. q., U. S. Patent Nos. 4,044,126, 4,414,209, and 4,364,923, which describe aerosols for delivery of a steroid useful for treatment inflammatory diseases, particularly asthma). These formulations for administration to the respiratory tract can be in the form of an aerosol or solution for a nebulizer, or as a microfine powder for insufflation, alone or in
10 combination with an inert carrier such as lactose. In such a case, the particles of the formulation will typically have diameters of less than 50 microns, preferably less than 10 microns.

The compounds may be formulated for local or topical application, such as for topical application to the skin and mucous membranes, such as in the eye, in the form
15 of gels, creams, and lotions and for application to the eye or for intracisternal or intraspinal application. Topical administration is contemplated for transdermal delivery and also for administration to the eyes or mucosa, or for inhalation therapies. Nasal solutions of the active compound alone or in combination with other pharmaceutically acceptable excipients also can be administered.

20 Formulations suitable for transdermal administration are provided. They can be provided in any suitable format, such as discrete patches adapted to remain in intimate contact with the epidermis of the recipient for a prolonged period of time. Such patches contain the active compound in optionally buffered aqueous solution of, for example, 0.1 to 0.2M concentration with respect to the active compound.
25 Formulations suitable for transdermal administration also can be delivered by iontophoresis (see, e.g., *Pharmaceutical Research* 3(6), 318 (1986)) and typically take the form of an optionally buffered aqueous solution of the active compound.

3. Compositions for other routes of administration

Depending upon the condition treated other routes of administration, such as
30 topical application, transdermal patches, oral and rectal administration are also contemplated herein. For example, pharmaceutical dosage forms for rectal administration are rectal suppositories, capsules and tablets for systemic effect. Rectal suppositories include solid bodies for insertion into the rectum which melt or soften at body temperature releasing one or more pharmacologically or therapeutically active

ingredients. Pharmaceutically acceptable substances utilized in rectal suppositories are bases or vehicles and agents to raise the melting point. Examples of bases include cocoa butter (theobroma oil), glycerin-gelatin, carbowax (polyoxyethylene glycol) and appropriate mixtures of mono-, di- and triglycerides of fatty acids. Combinations
 5 of the various bases may be used. Agents to raise the melting point of suppositories include spermaceti and wax. Rectal suppositories may be prepared either by the compressed method or by molding. The typical weight of a rectal suppository is about 2 to 3 gm. Tablets and capsules for rectal administration are manufactured using the same pharmaceutically acceptable substance and by the same methods as for
 10 formulations for oral administration.

Formulations suitable for rectal administration can be provided as unit dose suppositories. These can be prepared by admixing the active compound with one or more conventional solid carriers, for example, cocoa butter, and then shaping the resulting mixture.

15 For oral administration, pharmaceutical compositions can take the form of, for example, tablets or capsules prepared by conventional means with pharmaceutically acceptable excipients such as binding agents (*e.g.*, pregelatinized maize starch, polyvinyl pyrrolidone or hydroxypropyl methylcellulose); fillers (*e.g.*, lactose, microcrystalline cellulose or calcium hydrogen phosphate); lubricants (*e.g.*,
 20 magnesium stearate, talc or silica); disintegrants (*e.g.*, potato starch or sodium starch glycolate); or wetting agents (*e.g.*, sodium lauryl sulphate). The tablets can be coated by methods well-known in the art.

Formulations suitable for buccal (sublingual) administration include, for example, lozenges containing the active compound in a flavored base, usually sucrose
 25 and acacia or tragacanth; and pastilles containing the compound in an inert base such as gelatin and glycerin or sucrose and acacia.

Pharmaceutical compositions also can be administered by controlled release formulations and/or delivery devices (see, *e.g.*, in U.S. Patent Nos. 3,536,809; 3,598,123; 3,630,200; 3,845,770; 3,847,770; 3,916,899; 4,008,719; 4,687,610;
 30 4,769,027; 5,059,595; 5,073,543; 5,120,548; 5,354,566; 5,591,767; 5,639,476; 5,674,533 and 5,733,566).

Various delivery systems are known and can be used to administer selected matrix-degrading enzymes, such as but not limited to, encapsulation in liposomes, microparticles, microcapsules, recombinant cells capable of expressing the

compound, receptor mediated endocytosis, and delivery of nucleic acid molecules encoding selected matrix-degrading enzymes such as retrovirus delivery systems.

Hence, in certain embodiments, liposomes and/or nanoparticles also can be employed with administration of matrix-degrading enzymes. Liposomes are formed from phospholipids that are dispersed in an aqueous medium and spontaneously form multilamellar concentric bilayer vesicles (also termed multilamellar vesicles (MLVs)). MLVs generally have diameters of from 25 nm to 4 μ m. Sonication of MLVs results in the formation of small unilamellar vesicles (SUVs) with diameters in the range of 200 to 500 angstroms containing an aqueous solution in the core.

Phospholipids can form a variety of structures other than liposomes when dispersed in water, depending on the molar ratio of lipid to water. At low ratios, the liposomes form. Physical characteristics of liposomes depend on pH, ionic strength and the presence of divalent cations. Liposomes can show low permeability to ionic and polar substances, but at elevated temperatures undergo a phase transition which markedly alters their permeability. The phase transition involves a change from a closely packed, ordered structure, known as the gel state, to a loosely packed, less-ordered structure, known as the fluid state. This occurs at a characteristic phase-transition temperature and results in an increase in permeability to ions, sugars and drugs.

Liposomes interact with cells via different mechanisms: endocytosis by phagocytic cells of the reticuloendothelial system such as macrophages and neutrophils; adsorption to the cell surface, either by nonspecific weak hydrophobic or electrostatic forces, or by specific interactions with cell-surface components; fusion with the plasma cell membrane by insertion of the lipid bilayer of the liposome into the plasma membrane, with simultaneous release of liposomal contents into the cytoplasm; and by transfer of liposomal lipids to cellular or subcellular membranes, or vice versa, without any association of the liposome contents. Varying the liposome formulation can alter which mechanism is operative, although more than one can operate at the same time. Nanocapsules can generally entrap compounds in a stable and reproducible way. To avoid side effects due to intracellular polymeric overloading, such ultrafine particles (sized around 0.1 μ m) should be designed using polymers able to be degraded *in vivo*. Biodegradable polyalkyl-cyanoacrylate nanoparticles that meet these requirements are contemplated for use herein, and such particles can be easily made.

4. Combination Therapies

Any of the activatable matrix-degrading enzymes and activator combinations described herein can be further co-formulated or co-administered together with, prior to, intermittently with, or subsequent to, other therapeutic or pharmacologic agents or procedures. Such agents include, but are not limited to, other biologics, small molecule compounds, dispersing agents, anesthetics, vasoconstrictors and surgery, and combinations thereof. For example, for any disease or condition, including all those exemplified above, for which other agents and treatments are available, selected activatable matrix-degrading enzyme and activator combination for such diseases and conditions can be used in combination therewith. In another example, a local anesthetic, for example, lidocaine can be administered to provide pain relief. In some examples, the anesthetic can be provided in combination with a vasoconstrictor to increase the duration of the anesthetic effects. Any of the pharmacological agents provided herein can be combined with a dispersion agent that facilitates access into the tissue of pharmacologic agents, for example, following subcutaneous administration. Such substances are known in the art and include, for example, soluble glycosaminoglycanase enzymes such as members of the hyaluronidase glycoprotein family (US20050260186, US20060104968).

Compositions of activatable matrix-degrading enzymes provided herein can be co-formulated or co-administered with a local anesthesia. For example, where pH is provided as the activating condition, administration of a local anesthesia is desired to minimize pain associated with exposure to acidic pH. Anesthetics include short-acting and long-lasting local anesthetic drug formulations. Short-acting local anesthetic drug formulations contain lidocaine or a related local anesthetic drug dissolved in saline or other suitable injection vehicle. Typically, local anesthesia with short-acting local anesthetics last approximately 20-30 minutes. Exemplary anesthetics include, for example, non-inhalation local anesthetics such as ambucaines; amoxecaines; amylocaines; aptocaines; articaines; benoxinates; benzyl alcohols; benzocaines; betoxycaines; biphenamines; bucricaines; bumecaines; bupivacaines; butacaines; butambens; butanilicaines; carbizocaines; chloroprocaine; clibucaines; clodacaines; cocaines; dexivacaines; diamocaines; dibucaines; dyclonines; elucaines; etidocaines; euprocins; fexicaines; fomocaines; heptacaines; hexylcaines; hydroxyprocaines; hydroxytetracaines; isobutambens; ketocaines; leucinocaines; lidocaines; mepivacaines; meprylcaines; octocaines; orthocaines; oxethacaines; oxybuprocaines;

phenacaines; pinolcaines; piperocaines; piridocaines; polidocanols; pramocaines; prilocaines; procaines; propanocaines; propipocaines; propoxycaines; proxymetacaines; pyrrocaines; quatacaines; quinisocaines; risocaines; rodocaines; ropivacaines; salicyl alcohols; suicaines; tetracaines; trapencaines; and trimecaines; as
 5 well as various other non-inhalation anesthetics such as alfaxalones; amolanones; etoxadrols; fentanyl; ketamines; levoxadrols; methitural; methohexitals; midazolams; minaxolones; propanidids; propoxates; pramoxines; propofols; remifentanyl; sufentanyl; tiletamines; and zolamine. The effective amount in the formulation will vary depending on the particular patient, disease to be treated, route
 10 of administration and other considerations. Such dosages can be determined empirically.

Due to the short half-life of local anesthetics, it is often desirable to co-administer or co-formulate such anesthetics with a vasoconstrictor. Examples of vasoconstrictors include alpha adrenergic receptor agonists including catecholamines
 15 and catecholamine derivatives. Particular examples include, but are not limited to, levonordefrin, epinephrine and norepinephrine. For example, a local anesthetic formulation, such as lidocaine, can be formulated to contain low concentrations of epinephrine or another adrenergic receptor agonist such as levonordefrin. Combining local anesthetics with adrenergic receptor agonists is common in pharmaceutical
 20 preparations (see e.g., U.S. Patent No. 7,261,889 and 5,976,556). The vasoconstrictor is necessary to increase the half-life of anesthetics. The vasoconstrictor, such as epinephrine, stimulates alpha-adrenergic receptors on the blood vessels in the injected tissue. This has the effect of constriction the blood vessels in the tissue. The blood vessel constriction causes the local anesthetic to stay in the tissue much longer,
 25 resulting in a large increase in the duration of the anesthetic effect.

Generally, a vasoconstrictor is used herein in combination with an anesthetic. The anesthetic agent and vasoconstrictor can be administered together as part of a single pharmaceutical composition or as part of separate pharmaceutical compositions so long as the vasoconstrictor acts to constrict the blood vessels in the
 30 vicinity of whether the anesthetic agent has been administered to result in a prolonging of anesthesia. In one example, the anesthetic agent and vasoconstrictor are administered together in solution. In addition, the anesthetic agent and vasoconstrictor can be formulated together or separate from the activatable matrix-degrading enzyme and activator. Single formulations are preferred. The anesthetic

agent and vasoconstrictor can be administered by injection, by infiltration or by topical administration, e.g., as part of a gel or paste. Typically, the anesthetic agent and vasoconstrictor are administered by injection directly into the site to be anesthetized, for example, by subcutaneous administration. The effective amount in the formulation will vary depending on the particular patient, disease to be treated, route of administration and other considerations. Such dosages can be determined empirically. For example, exemplary amounts of lidocaine is or is about 10 mg to 1000 mg, 100 mg to 500 mg, 200 mg to 400 mg, 20 mg to 60 mg, or 30 mg to 50 mg. The dosage of lidocaine administered will vary depending on the individual and the route of administration. Epinephrine can be administered in amounts such as, for example, 10 µg to 5 mg, 50 µg to 1 mg, 50 µg to 500 µg, 50 µg to 250 µg, 100 µg to 500 µg, 200 µg to 400 µg, 1 mg to 5 mg or 2 mg to 4 mg. Typically, epinephrine can be combined with lidocaine in a 1:100,000 to 1:200,000 dilution, which means that 100 ml of anesthetic contains 0.5 to 1 mg of epinephrine. Volumes administered can be adjusted depending on the disease to be treated and the route of administration. It is contemplated herein that 1 -100 ml, 1 -50 ml, 10- 50 ml, 10-30 ml, 1-20 ml, or 1-10 ml, typically 10-50 ml of an anesthetic/vasoconstrictor formulation can be administered subcutaneously for the treatment of an ECM-mediated disease or condition, such as cellulite. The administration can be subsequently, simultaneously or intermittently with administration of an activatable matrix-degrading enzyme and activator.

Compositions of activatable matrix-degrading enzymes provided herein also can be co-formulated or co-administered with a dispersion agent. The dispersion agent also can be co-formulated or co-administered with other pharmacological agents, such as anesthetics, vasoconstrictors, or other biologic agents. Exemplary of dispersion agents are glycosaminoglycanases that open channels in the interstitial space through degradation of glycosaminoglycans. These channels can remain relatively open for a period of 24-48 hours depending on dose and formulation. Such channels can be used to facilitate the diffusion of exogenously added molecules such as fluids, small molecules, proteins (such as matrix degrading enzymes), nucleic acids and gene therapy vectors and other molecules less than about 500 nm in size. In addition, it is thought that the formation of such channels can facilitate bulk fluid flow within an interstitial space, which can in turn promote the dispersion or movement of a solute (such as a detectable molecule or other diagnostic agent, an anesthetic or other tissue-

modifying agent, a pharmacologic or pharmaceutically effective agent, or a cosmetic or other esthetic agent) that is effectively carried by the fluid in a process sometimes referred to as "convective transport" or simply convection. Such convective transport can substantially exceed the rate and cumulative effects of molecular diffusion and

5 can thus cause the therapeutic or other administered molecule to more rapidly and effectively perfuse a tissue. Furthermore, when an agent, such as a matrix degrading enzyme, anesthetic or other agent, is co-formulated or co-administered with a glycosaminoglycanase and both are injected into a relatively confined local site, such as a site of non-intravenous parenteral administration (e.g., intradermal, subcutaneous,

10 intramuscular, or into or around other internal tissues, organs or other relatively confined spaces within the body), then the fluid associated with the administered dose can both provide a local driving force (i.e. hydrostatic pressure) as well as lower impedance to flow (by opening channels within the interstitial matrix), both of which could increase fluid flow, and with it convective transport of the therapeutic agent or

15 other molecule contained within the fluid. As a result, the use of glycosaminoglycanases can have substantial utility for improving the bioavailability as well as manipulating other pharmacokinetic and/or pharmacodynamic characteristics of co-formulated or co-administered agents, such as matrix degrading enzymes.

20 **Hyaluronidases**

Exemplary of glycosaminoglycanases are hyaluronidases. Hyaluronidases are a family of enzymes that degrade hyaluronic acid. By catalyzing the hydrolysis of hyaluronic acid, a major constituent of the interstitial barrier, hyaluronidase lowers the viscosity of hyaluronic acid, thereby increasing tissue permeability. There are

25 three general classes of hyaluronidases: Mammalian-type hyaluronidases, (EC 3.2.1.35) which are endo-beta-N-acetylhexosaminidases with tetrasaccharides and hexasaccharides as the major end products. They have both hydrolytic and transglycosidase activities, and can degrade hyaluronan and chondroitin sulfates (CS), generally C4-S and C6-S; Bacterial hyaluronidases (EC 4.2.99.1), which degrade

30 hyaluronan and, and to various extents, CS and DS. They are endo-beta-N-acetylhexosaminidases that operate by a beta elimination reaction that yields primarily disaccharide end products; and Hyaluronidases (EC 3.2.1.36) from leeches, other parasites, and crustaceans that are endo-beta-glucuronidases that generate

tetrasaccharide and hexasaccharide end products through hydrolysis of the beta 1-3 linkage.

There are six hyaluronidase-like genes in the human genome, HYAL1 (SEQ ID NO:262), HYAL2 (SEQ ID NO: 263), HYAL3 (SEQ ID NO:264), HYAL4 (SEQ ID NO:265) and PH20/SPAM1 (SEQ ID NO:232). Among hyaluronidases, PH20 is the prototypical natural active enzyme, while the others exhibit no catalytic activity towards hyaluronan or any known substrates, or are active only under pH conditions. The hyaluronidase-like enzymes can also be characterized by those which are generally locked to the plasma membrane via a glycosylphosphatidyl inositol anchor such as human HYAL2 and human PH20 (Danilkovitch-Miagkova, et al. (2003) Proc Natl Acad Sci USA. 100(8):4580-5), and those which are generally soluble such as human HYAL1 (Frost et al, (1997) Biochem Biophys Res Commun. 236(1):10-5). N-linked glycosylation of some hyaluronidases can be very important for their catalytic activity and stability. While altering the type of glycan modifying a glycoprotein can have dramatic effects on a protein's antigenicity, structural folding, solubility, and stability, many enzymes are not thought to require glycosylation for optimal enzyme activity. Hyaluronidases are, therefore, unique in this regard, in that removal of N-linked glycosylation can result in near complete inactivation of the hyaluronidase activity. For such hyaluronidases, the presence of N-linked glycans is critical for generating an active enzyme.

Human PH20 (also known as sperm surface protein PH20) is naturally involved in sperm-egg adhesion and aids penetration by sperm of the layer of cumulus cells by digesting hyaluronic acid. The PH20 mRNA transcript (corresponding to nucleotides 1058-2503 of the sequence set forth in SEQ ID NO:224) is normally translated to generate a 509 amino acid precursor protein containing a 35 amino acid signal sequence at the N-terminus (amino acid residue positions 1-35) and a 19 amino acid GPI anchor at the C-terminus (corresponding to amino acid residues 491-509). The precursor sequence is set forth in SEQ ID NO:232. An mRNA transcript containing a mutation of C to T at nucleotide position 2188 of the sequence of amino acids set forth in SEQ ID NO:224 also exists and is a silent mutation resulting in the translated product set forth in SEQ ID NO: 232. The mature PH20 is, therefore, a 474 amino acid polypeptide set forth in SEQ ID NO:233). There are potential N-linked glycosylation sites required for hyaluronidases activity at N82, N166, N235, N254, N368, N393, N490 of human PH20 exemplified in SEQ ID NO: 232. Disulfide bonds

form between the cysteine residues C60 and C351 and between C224 and C238 (corresponding to amino acids set forth in SEQ ID NO:232) to form the core hyaluronidase domain. However, additional cysteines are required in the carboxy terminus for neutral enzyme catalytic activity such that amino acids 36 to 464 of SEQ ID NO:232 contains the minimally active human PH20 hyaluronidase domain.

Soluble forms of recombinant human PH20 have been produced and can be used in the methods described herein for co-administration or co-formulation with matrix degrading enzymes, activators, anesthetics, vasoconstrictors, other pharmacologic or thereapeutic agents, or combinations thereof, to permit the diffusion into tissues. The production of such soluble forms of PH20 is described in related Application Nos. 11/065,716 and 11/238,171, and in Examples 12-15 below. Soluble forms include, but are not limited to, any having C-terminal truncations to generate polypeptides containing amino acid 1 to amino acid 442, 443, 444, 445, 446 and 447 of the sequence of amino acids set forth in SEQ ID NOS 226-231:. Exemplary of such a polypeptides are those generated from a nucleic acid molecule encoding amino acids 1-482 set forth in SEQ ID NO:225. The generation, production and purification of this PH20 is described in Examples 12-15 below. Resulting purified rHuPH20 can be heterogenous due to peptidases present in the culture medium upon production and purification. Generally souluble forms of PH20 are produced using protein expression systems that facilitate correct N-glycosylation to to ensure the polypeptide retains activity, since glycosylation is important for the catalytic activity and stability of hyaluronidases. Such cells include, for example Chinese Hamster Ovary (CHO) cells (e.g. DG44 CHO cells).

The soluble PH20 can be administered by any suitable route as described elsewhere herein. Typcially, administration is by parenteral administration, such as by intradermal, intramuscular, subcutaneous or intravascular administration. The compounds provided herein can be formulated for parenteral administration by injection, e.g., by bolus injection or continuous infusion. Formulations for injection can be presented in unit dosage form, e.g., in ampoules or in multi-dose containers, with an added preservative. The compositions can be suspensions, solutions or emulsions in oily or aqueous vehicles, and can contain formulatory agents such as suspending, stabilizing and/or dispersing agents. Alternatively, the active ingredient can be in powder form for reconstitution with a suitable vehicle, e.g., sterile pyrogen-free water or other solvents, before use. For example, provided herein are parenteral

formulations containing an effective amount of soluble PH20, such as 10 Units to 500,000 Units, 100 Units to 100,000 Units, 500 Units to 50,000 Units, 1000 Units to 10,000 Units, 5000 Units to 7500 Units, 5000 Units to 50,000 Units, or 1,000 Units to 10,000 Units, generally 10,000 to 50,000 Units, in a stabilized solution or suspension
5 or a lyophilized form. The formulations can be provided in unit-dose forms such as, but not limited to, ampoules, syringes and individually packaged tablets or capsules. The dispersing agent can be administered alone, or with other pharmacologically effective agents in a total volume of 1 -100 ml, 1 -50 ml, 10- 50 ml, 10-30 ml, 1-20 ml, or 1-10 ml, typically 10-50 ml.

10 In one example of a combination therapy, it is contemplated herein that a anesthetic, vasoconstrictor and dispersion agent are co-administered or co-formulated with an activatable matrix-degrading enzyme and/or activator to be administered subsequently, simultaneously or intermittently therewith. An exemplary formulation is one containing lidocaine, epinephrine and a soluble PH20, for example, a soluble
15 PH20 set forth in SEQ ID NO:226. Soluble PH20 can be mixed directly with lidocaine (Xylocaine), and optionally with epinephrine. The formulation can be prepared in a unit dosage form, such as in a syringe. For example, the lidocaine/epinephrine/soluble PH20 formulation can be provided in a volume, such as 1 -100 ml, 1 -50 ml, 10- 50 ml, 10-30 ml, 1-20 ml, or 1-10 ml, typically 10-50 ml,
20 prepackaged in a syringe for use.

In the combination therapies, the other pharmacologic agents, such as a lidocaine/epinephrine/soluble PH20 formulation, can be co-administered together with or in close temporal proximity to the administration of an activatable matrix-degrading enzyme (and activator). Typically it is preferred that an anesthetic and/or
25 dispersion agent be administered shortly before (e.g. 5 to 60 minutes before) or, for maximal convenience, together with the pharmacologic agent. As will be appreciated by those of skill in the art, the desired proximity of co-administration depends in significant part on the effective half lives of the agents in the particular tissue setting, and the particular disease being treated, and can be readily optimized by testing the
30 effects of administering the agents at varying times in suitable models, such as in suitable animal models.

G. Packaging and Articles of Manufacture of Activatable Matrix-Degrading Enzymes

Pharmaceutical compounds of selected matrix-degrading enzymes or nucleic acids encoding selected matrix-degrading enzymes, or a derivative or variant thereof can be packaged as articles of manufacture containing packaging material, a pharmaceutical composition which is effective for treating the disease or disorder, and
5 a label that indicates that selected matrix-degrading enzyme or nucleic acid molecule is to be used for treating the disease or disorder. Combinations of a selected matrix-degrading enzyme, or derivative or variant thereof and an activator also can be packaged in an article of manufacture.

The articles of manufacture provided herein contain packaging materials.
10 Packaging materials for use in packaging pharmaceutical products are well known to those of skill in the art. See, for example, U.S. Patent Nos. 5,323,907, 5,052,558 and 5,033,252, each of which is incorporated herein in its entirety. Examples of pharmaceutical packaging materials include, but are not limited to, blister packs, bottles, tubes, inhalers, pumps, bags, vials, containers, syringes, bottles, and any
15 packaging material suitable for a selected formulation and intended mode of administration and treatment. The articles of manufacture can include a needle or other injection device so as to facilitate administration (e.g. sub-epidermal administration) for local injection purposes. A wide array of formulations of the compounds and compositions provided herein are contemplated as are a variety of
20 treatments for any ECM-mediated disease or disorder.

The choice of package depends on the matrix-degrading enzyme and activator, and whether such compositions will be packaged together or separately. In general, the packaging is non-reactive with the compositions contained therein such that activation of the activatable matrix-degrading enzyme does not occur prior to addition
25 of the activator. In one example, the activatable matrix-degrading enzyme can be packaged as a mixture with the activator. Thus, for example, a lysosomal enzyme (e.g., cathepsin L) that requires low pH for activation can be packaged as a mixture with a buffered acidic solution.

In another example, the components can be packaged as separate compositions
30 that, upon mixing, result in activation of the matrix-degrading enzyme. For example, a composition containing a matrix-degrading enzyme can be provided separately from, and for use with, a separate composition containing an activator, such as a buffered acidic solution. Thus, in such examples, the activatable matrix-degrading enzyme is packaged in a separate container from the activator, and activation is

achieved by exposure to the activator at the users will. Exposure to the activator can occur at any time preceding administration by addition of the activator to the enzyme. For example, the container can have a single compartment containing the matrix-degrading enzyme and being amenable to addition of the activator by the user, for example through an opening in the compartment. Any container or other article of manufacture that is amenable to having a defining space for containment of the matrix-degrading enzyme and that is amenable to simple manipulation to permit addition of the final components necessary for activation is contemplated. The activator is added prior to use. Exposure to the activator also can occur following administration to the interstitium. For example, if heat is the activator, a matrix-degrading enzyme can be administered and the local injection site subjected to heat. In an alternate example, an acidic buffered solution can be administered to the interstitium followed by administration of a matrix-degrading enzyme, for example any requiring acidic pH for activation such as a cathepsin.

15 In other examples, the activatable matrix-degrading enzyme is packaged in a container with the activator such that activation of the matrix-degrading enzyme is amenable to activation by the user at will in the container. Generally, examples of such containers include those that have an enclosed, defined space that contains the matrix-degrading enzyme, and a separate enclosed, defined space containing the

20 activator such that the two spaces are separated by a readily removable membrane which, upon removal, permits the components to mix and thereby react, resulting in activation of the protease. Any container or other article of manufacture is contemplated, so long as the matrix-degrading enzyme is separated from the activator. Exposure of the activator to the matrix-degrading enzyme is prior to use. For example,

25 the physical separation means are those that are readily removed by the user, to permit mixing, resulting in activation of the enzyme. For example, an article of manufacture can contain a matrix-degrading enzyme in one compartment and an activator in an adjacent compartment. The compartments are separated by a dividing member, such as a membrane, that, upon compression of the article or manufacture ruptures

30 permitting separated components to mix. For suitable embodiments see e.g., containers described in U.S. Patent Nos. 3,539,794 and 5,171,081.

Following are some examples of the packaging requirements of various end uses of activatable matrix-degrading enzymes. These are offered as examples only and in no way are intended as limiting.

1. Single Chamber Apparatus

Among the simplest embodiments herein, are those in which the apparatus contains a single chamber or container and, if needed, ejection means. Single chamber housings or containers include any item in which a matrix-degrading enzyme is included in the container. The matrix-degrading enzyme is housed in the vessel in liquid phase or as a powder or other paste or other convenient composition. The activator component is introduced just prior to use. Prior to use the activator, typically provided as a buffered solution, is added and contacted with the matrix-degrading enzyme to permit mixing and/or reconstitution of the matrix-degrading enzyme. For example, when desired and depending on the matrix-degrading enzyme, a liquid containing Ca^{2+} , such as a mixture containing the Ca^{2+} in an appropriate buffer, or an acidic buffered solution, or other solution containing an activating condition, is added to the container. Kits containing the item and the activator also are provided.

2. Dual Chamber Apparatus

An example of an apparatus contemplated for use herein is a dual chamber container. In general, this apparatus has two chambers or compartments thereby maintaining the matrix-degrading enzyme separate from the activator until until activation is desired. The apparatus can include a mixing chamber to permit mixing of the components prior to dispensing from the apparatus. Alternatively, mixing can occur by ejection of the activator from one chamber into a second chamber containing the activatable matrix-degrading enzyme. For example, the activatable matrix-degrading enzyme can be provided in lyophilized form, and reconstitution can be achieved by ejection of the activator, such as an acidic buffered solution, from a first chamber into the second chamber containing the lyophilized enzyme.

In one embodiment, a dual chamber apparatus employs a mechanical pump mechanism in its operation. In such an example, the dispensing apparatus maintains the components in separate chambers. A pump mechanism operated to withdraw the contents from each chamber and into a mixing chamber, or from one chamber into the second chamber. Upon mixing, the mixed composition is activated by reaction of the components in the chambers. The pump mechanism can be manually operated, for example, by a plunger. Exemplary of such dual chamber apparatus include dual chamber syringes (see e.g., U.S. Patent Nos. 6972005, 6692468, 5971953, 4529403,

4202314, 4214584, 4983164, 5788670, 5395326; and Intl. Patent Appl. Nos. WO2007006030, WO2001047584).

Another embodiment of a dual chamber fluid dispensing apparatus contemplated for use herein takes the form of a compressible bottle or tube or other similar device. The device has two compartments within it that keep the components separated. The cap of the device can serve as a mixing chamber, a mixing chamber can be positioned between the two chambers and the cap, or mixing can be achieved within one of the chambers. The components are forced by compression from the separate compartments into the mixing chamber. They are then dispensed from the mixing chamber. For example, the mixed contents can be removed from the device by attaching a plunger/syringe apparatus to the dispensing end and withdrawing the contents therethrough. Such devices are known in the art (see e.g., Intl. Patent Appln. No. WO1994015848).

3. Kits

Selected matrix-degrading enzymes, activators and/or articles of manufacture thereof also can be provided as kits. Kits can include a pharmaceutical composition described herein and an item for administration provided as an article of manufacture. For example a selected matrix-degrading enzyme can be supplied with a device for administration, such as a syringe, an inhaler, a dosage cup, a dropper, or an applicator. The compositions can be contained in the item for administration or can be provided separately to be added later. Generally, kits contain an item with a matrix-degrading enzyme, and an activator composition containing the activating condition. The kit can, optionally, include instructions for application including dosages, dosing regimens and instructions for modes of administration. Kits also can include a pharmaceutical composition described herein and an item for diagnosis. For example, such kits can include an item for measuring the concentration, amount or activity of the selected protease in a subject.

H. Methods of Assessing Activity of Matrix-Degrading Enzymes

1. Methods of Assessing Enzymatic Activity

Activatable matrix-degrading enzymes can be tested for their enzymatic activity against known substrates. Activity assessment can be performed in the presence or absence of an activator. Activity assessment also can be performed under varying conditions, for example, by varying the amount of activator used for activation. In one example, pH profiles can be performed to determine the relative

activity of an enzyme under various pH conditions (see e.g., Dehrmann et al. (1995) *Arch. Biochem. Biophys.*, 324:93-98). Activity assessments can be performed on conditioned medium or other supernatants or on purified protein.

Enzymatic activity can be assessed by assaying for substrate cleavage using
 5 known substrates of the enzyme. The substrates can be in the form of a purified protein or provided as peptide substrates. For example, enzymatic activity of cathepsin L can be assessed by cleavage of Azocasein, collagen or elastin. Cleavage of a purified protein by an enzyme can be assessed using any method of protein detection, including, but not limited to, HPLC, SDS-PAGE analysis, ELISA, Western
 10 blotting, immunohistochemistry, immunoprecipitation, NH₂-terminal sequencing, and protein labeling.

The use of fluorigenic groups on the substrates facilitates detection of cleavage. For example, substrates can be provided as fluorigenically tagged tetrapeptides of the peptide substrate, such as an ACC- or 7-amino-4-methyl
 15 coumarin (AMC)-tetrapeptide. Other fluorogenic groups are known and can be used and coupled to protein or peptide substrates. These include, for example, 7-amino-4-methyl-2-quinolinone (AMeq), 2-naphthylamine (NHNap) and 7 amino-4-methylcoumarin (NHMec) (Sarath et al. "Protease Assay Methods," in *Proteolytic Enzymes: A Practical Approach*. Ed. Robert J. Beynon and Judith S. Bond. Oxford
 20 University Press, 2001. pp. 45-76). Peptide substrates are known to one of skill in the art, as are exemplary fluorigenic peptide substrates. For example, exemplary substrates for cathepsin B include, N- α BZ-Phe-Val-Arg-p-NA, DNA-Phe-Arg-Nph-Leu, Z-Ala-Arg-Arg-F³MCA, Z-Arg-Arg-MBNA, Z-Arg-Arg-NHMec, Z-Phe-Arg-NHMec, and Z-Leu-Arg-Amc and variations thereof such as with different fluorigenic
 25 groups. In another example, an exemplary substrate for cathepsin L includes Z-Phe-Arg-NHMec and Z-Leu-Arg-AMC, and variations thereof such as with different fluorigenic groups. Thus, since cathepsin B and cathepsin L share the same substrate, for example, Z-Phe-Arg-NHMec and Z-Leu-Arg-AMC, activity assessment of cathepsin L can be performed in the presence of an inhibitor to cathepsin B.
 30 Exemplary of such an inhibitor is CA-074. This is exemplified in Example 9 herein. Enzymes assays to measure enzymatic activity by fluorescence intensity are standard, and are typically performed as a function of incubation time of the enzyme and substrate (see e.g., Dehrmann et al. (1995) *Arch. Biochem. Biophys.*, 324:93-98; Barrett et al. (1981) *Methods Enzymol.*, 80:536-561).

While detection of fluorogenic compounds can be accomplished using a fluorometer, detection can be accomplished by a variety of other methods well known to those of skill in the art. Thus, for example, when the fluorophores emit in the visible wavelengths, detection can be simply by visual inspection of fluorescence in response to excitation by a light source. Detection also can be by means of an image analysis system utilizing a video camera interfaced to a digitizer or other image acquisition system. Detection also can be by visualization through a filter, as under a fluorescence microscope. The microscope can provide a signal that is simply visualized by the operator. Alternatively, the signal can be recorded on photographic film or using a video analysis system. The signal also can simply be quantified in real time using either an image analysis system or a photometer.

Thus, for example, a basic assay for enzyme activity of a sample involves suspending or dissolving the sample in a buffer (at the pH optima of the particular protease being assayed) adding to the buffer a fluorogenic enzyme peptide indicator, and monitoring the resulting change in fluorescence using a spectrofluorometer as shown in *e.g.*, Harris *et al.*, (1998) *J Biol Chem* 273:27364. The spectrofluorometer is set to excite the fluorophore at the excitation wavelength of the fluorophore. The fluorogenic enzyme indicator is a substrate sequence of an enzyme (*e.g.* of a protease) that changes in fluorescence due to a protease cleaving the indicator.

2. Methods of Assessing ECM Degradation

The degradation of extracellular matrix proteins by matrix-degrading enzymes, including, but not limited to, those described above, such as cathepsin L, can be assessed *in vitro* or *in vivo*. Assays for such assessment are known to those of skill in the art, and can be used to test the activities of a variety of matrix-degrading enzymes on a variety of extracellular matrix proteins, including, but not limited to collagen (I, II, III and IV), fibronectin, vitronectin and proteoglycans.

a. *In vitro* assays

Exemplary *in vitro* assays include assays to assess the degradation products of extracellular matrix proteins following incubation with a matrix-degrading enzyme. In some examples, the assays detect a single, specific degradation product. In other examples, the assays detect multiple degradation products, the identity of which may or may not be known. Assessment of degradation products can be performed using methods well known in the art including, but not limited to, HPLC, SDS-PAGE analysis, ELISA, Western blotting, immunohistochemistry, immunoprecipitation,

NH₂-terminal sequencing, and protein labeling. Extracellular matrix degradation products can be visualized, for example, by SDS-PAGE analysis following incubation with matrix-degrading enzymes for an appropriate amount of time at an appropriate temperature. For example, collagen can be incubated with activated cathepsin L and
5 subjected to SDS-PAGE using, for example, a 4-20% Tris/glycine gel to separate the products. Coomassie staining of the gel facilitates visualization of smaller degradation products, compared to intact collagen. Immunoblotting using, for example, an polyclonal Ig specific to the extracellular matrix protein also can be used to visualize the degradation products following separation with SDS-PAGE.

10 Assays that specifically detect a single product following degradation of an extracellular matrix protein also are known in the art and can be used to assess the ability of a matrix-degrading enzyme to degrade an extracellular matrix protein. For example, the hydroxyproline (HP) assay can be used to measure degradation of collagen. 4-hydroxyproline is a modified imino acid that makes up approximately
15 12% of the weight of collagen. HP assays measure the amount of solubilized collagen by determining the amount of HP in the supernatant following incubation with a matrix-degrading enzyme, such as activated cathepsin L (see e.g., , Example 2, below, and Reddy and Enwemeka (1996) Clinical Biochemistry 29:225-229). Measurement of HP can be effected by, for example, colorimetric methods, high performance liquid
20 chromatography, mass spectrometry and enzymatic methods (see e.g., Edwards et al., (1980) Clin. Chim. Acta 104:161-167, Green (1992) Anal. Biochem. 201:265-269, Tredget et al., (1990) Anal. Biochem. 190:259-265, Ito et al., (1985) Anal. Biochem. 151:510-514, Garner et al. (1998) J. Biol. Chem 273:32347-32352).

The collagen source used in such *in vitro* assays can include, but is not limited
25 to, commercially available purified collagen, bone particles, skin, cartilage and rat tail tendon. Collagenolytic activity of a matrix-degrading enzyme such as cathepsin L can be assessed by incubating the activated enzyme with an insoluble collagen suspension, followed by hydrolysis, such as with HCl. The amount of hydroxyproline derived from the solubilized (degraded) collagen can be determined by
30 spectrophotometric methods, such as measuring the absorbance at 550 nm following incubation with Ehrlich's reagent. In some examples, the collagen source is rat or pig skin explant that is surgically removed from anesthetized animals and then perfused with first an acidic solution and then the matrix-degrading enzyme, such as cathepsin L (see e.g. Examples 3-4, below). HP levels in the perfusates can then be assessed. In

a modification of this method, the effect of, for example, cathepsin L on the fibrous septae in the explants can be assessed (see e.g. Example 5). Briefly, following perfusion with the matrix degrading enzyme, the explants are cut into small pieces and embedded in paraffin and analyzed by microscopy following Mason Trichrome staining for visualization of collagen. The number of collagen fibrous septae can be visualized and compared to tissue that has not been treated with a matrix degrading enzyme.

Assays to detect degradation of specific collagens also are known in the art. Such assays can employ immunological methods to detect a degradation product unique to the specific collagen. For example, the degradation of collagen I by some matrix-degrading enzymes releases telopeptides with different epitopes that can be detected using immunoassays. Such assays detect the cross-linked N-telopeptides (NTx) and the cross-linked C-telopeptides (CTx and ICTP), each of which contain unique epitopes. Typically, CTx assays utilize the CrossLaps (Nordic Biosciences) antibodies that recognize the 8 amino acid sequence EKAHD- β -GGR octapeptide, where the aspartic acid is in β -isomerized configuration, in the C-terminal telopeptide region of the α 1 chain (Eastell (2001) Bone Markers: Biochemical and Clinical Perspectives, pg 40). Immunoassays to detect ICTP also are known in the art and can be used to detect degradation of collagen I (US Patent No. 5,538,853). In other examples, immunoassays, such as, for example, ELISAs, can be used to detect NTx following incubation of collagen type I with proteases such as Cathepsins K, S, L and B (Atley et al., (2000) Bone, 26:241-247). Other antibodies and assays specific for degraded collagens are known in the art and can be used to detect degradation by matrix-degrading enzymes. These include antibodies and assays specific for degraded collagen I (Hartmann et al (1990) Clin Chem 36:421-426), collagen II (Hollander et al (1994) J Clin Invest 93:1722-1732), collagen III (US Patent No. 5,34,2756), collagen IV (Wilkinson et al (1990) Anal Biochem 185:294-6).

b. *In vivo* assays

Assays to detect the *in vivo* degradation of ECM also are known in the art. Such assays can utilize the methods described above to detect, for example, hydroxyproline and N- and C-telopeptides and degraded collagens or other ECM in biological samples such as urine, blood, serum and tissue. Detection of degraded ECM can be performed following administration to the patient of one or more matrix-degrading enzymes. Detection of pyridinoline (PYD) and deoxypyridinoline (DPYD),

also can be used to assess degradation of collagen. Also known as hydroxyllysylpyridinoline and lysylpyridinoline, respectively, PYD and DPYD are the two nonreducible trivalent cross-links that stabilize type I collagen chains and are released during the degradation of mature collagen fibrils. Pyridinoline is abundant in bone and cartilage, whereas deoxypyridinoline is largely confined to bone. Type III collagen also contains pyridinoline cross-links at the amino terminus. Total PYD and DPYD can be measured, for example, in hydrolyzed urine samples or serum by fluorimetric detection after reversed-phase HPLC (Hata et al (1995) Clin Chimica Acta 235:221-227).

10 **c. Non-human animal models**

Non-human animal models can be used to assess the activity of matrix-degrading enzymes. For example, non-human animals can be used as models for a disease or condition. Non-human animals can be injected with disease and/or phenotype-inducing substances prior to administration of matrix-degrading enzymes.

15 Genetic models also are useful. Animals, such as mice, can be generated which mimic a disease or condition by the overexpression, underexpression or knock-out of one or more genes. For example, animal models are known in the art for conditions including, but not limited to, Peyronie's Disease (Davila et al. (2004) Biol Reprod, 71:1568-1577), tendinosis (Warden et al., (2006) Br. J. Sports Med. 41:232-240) and
20 scleroderma (Yamamoto (2005) Cur. Rheum. Rev. 1:105-109).

Non-human animals also can be used to test the activity of matrix-degrading enzymes *in vivo* in a non-diseased animal. For example, matrix-degrading enzymes can be administered to, non-human animals, such as, a mouse, rat or pig, and the level of ECM degradation can be determined. In some examples, the animals are used to
25 obtain explants for *ex vivo* assessment of ECM degradation, such as that described above and in Examples 3-5, below. In other examples, ECM degradation is assessed *in vivo*. In one example, collagen degradation of the skin of anesthetized rats is assessed (see e.g. Examples 6 below). Briefly, a matrix degrading enzyme, such as cathepsin L in a buffer with a pH of 5, is perfused via insertion of a needle into the
30 dermal layer of the skin of the tail. Perfusate fractions are collected from the tail skin and analyzed for collagen degradation by hydroxyproline analysis. Other methods can be used to detect degradation including, but not limited to, any of the assays described above, such as immunoassays to detect specific degradation products. The effect of administering an acidic solution, such as the buffer containing cathepsin L that

facilitates optimal activity, to the skin also can be assessed in a non-human animal model (see e.g. Example 7). Dyes sensitive to pH change, such as phenol red, can be used for these purposes.

I. Exemplary Methods of Treating Diseases or Defects of ECM

5 The activatable matrix degrading enzymes provided herein can be used for treatment of any condition mediated by any one or more ECM components. This section provides exemplary uses of, and administration methods for, activatable matrix-degrading enzymes. These described therapies are exemplary and do not limit the applications of enzymes. Such methods include, but are not limited to, methods
10 of treatment of any ECM condition or disease that is caused by excess, aberrant or accumulated expression of any one or more ECM component. Exemplary of diseases or conditions to be treated are any mediated by collagen, elastin, fibronectin, or a glycosaminoglycan such as a proteoglycan. For example, exemplary of collagen-mediated diseases or disorders include, but are not limited to, cellulite, Dupuytren's
15 disease, Peyronie's disease, frozen shoulder, chronic tendinosis or scar tissue of the tendons, localized scleroderma and lymphedema. It is within the skill of a treating physician to identify such diseases or conditions.

The particular disease or condition to be treated dictates the activatable matrix-degrading enzyme that is selected. For example, treatment of a collagen-mediated disease or disorder can be effected by administration of matrix-degrading
20 enzyme that cleaves collagen. Such matrix-degrading enzymes are listed above in Table 3, and/or known to one of skill in the art. Activatable matrix-degrading enzymes, and systems and methods for activation can be chosen accordingly to treat a particular disease or condition. For example, cathepsins of the cysteine and aspartic
25 families can be made temporally active by acidic pH conditions as described herein. Thus, in one example, a cathepsin that cleaves a collagen, for example, cathepsin L, can be administered in the presence of an activating condition, such as acidic pH, to treat a collagen-mediated disease or condition.

Treatment of diseases and conditions with activatable matrix-degrading
30 enzymes can be effected by any suitable route of administration using suitable formulations as described herein including, but not limited to, subcutaneous injection, intramuscular, intradermal, oral, and topical and transdermal administration. As described above, a route of administration of activatable matrix-degrading enzymes typically is chosen that results in administration under the skin directly to the affected

site. Exemplary of such routes of administration include, but are not limited to, subcutaneous, intramuscular, or intradermal.

If necessary, a particular dosage and duration and treatment protocol can be empirically determined or extrapolated. For example, exemplary doses of

5 recombinant and native active matrix-degrading enzymes or activatable matrix-degrading enzymes can be used as a starting point to determine appropriate dosages. Dosage levels can be determined based on a variety of factors, such as body weight of the individual, general health, age, the activity of the specific compound employed, sex, diet, time of administration, rate of excretion, drug combination, the severity and

10 course of the disease, and the patient's disposition to the disease and the judgment of the treating physician. The amount of active ingredient that can be combined with the carrier materials to produce a single dosage form will vary depending upon the particular matrix-degrading enzyme, the host treated, the particular mode of administration, and the activating condition required for activation, and/or the

15 predetermined or length of time in which activation is desired. The pharmaceutical compositions typically should provide a dosage of from about 1 µg/ml to about 20 mg/ml. Generally, dosages are from or about 10 µg/ml to 1 mg/ml, typically about 100 µg/ml, per single dosage administration. It is understood that the amount to administer will be a function of the activatable matrix-degrading enzyme and the

20 activating condition chosen, the indication treated, and possibly side effects that will be tolerated. Dosages can be empirically determined using recognized models for each disorder. Also, as described elsewhere herein, activatable matrix-degrading enzymes can be administered in combination with other agents sequentially, simultaneously or intermittently. Exemplary of such agents include, but are not

25 limited to, lidocaine, epinephrine, a dispersing agent such as hyaluronidase and combinations thereof.

Upon improvement of a patient's condition, a maintenance dose of a compound or compositions can be administered, if necessary; and the dosage, the dosage form, or frequency of administration, or a combination thereof can be

30 modified. In some cases, a subject can require intermittent treatment on a long-term basis upon any recurrence of disease symptoms.

Descriptions of the involvement of collagen to collagen-mediated diseases or conditions is provided below as an example of the role of ECM components in diverse disease and conditions. Such descriptions are meant to be exemplary only and are not

limited to a particular activatable matrix-degrading enzyme or to a particular ECM-mediated diseases or conditions. One of skill in the art can select an activatable matrix-degrading enzyme and activating condition for activation thereof, to be used in the treatment of any desired ECM-mediated disease, based on the ability of a particular enzyme to cleave or degrade an ECM component involved in the particular disease or condition. The particular treatment and dosage can be determined by one of skill in the art. Considerations in assessing treatment include, for example, the disease to be treated, the ECM component involved in the disease, the severity and course of the disease, whether the activatable matrix-degrading enzyme is administered for preventive or therapeutic purposes, previous therapy, the patient's clinical history and response to therapy, and the discretion of the attending physician.

Collagen-mediated Diseases or Conditions

Collagen is a major structural constituent of mammalian organisms and makes up a large portion of the total protein content of the skin and other parts of the animal body. Numerous diseases and conditions are associated with excess collagen deposition, for example, due to erratic accumulation of fibrous tissue rich in collagen or other causes. Collagen-mediated diseases or conditions (also referred to as fibrotic tissue disorders) are known to one of skill in the art (see e.g., published U.S. Applic. No. US20070224183; U.S. Patent Nos. 6353028; 6060474; 6566331; 6294350). Excess collagen has been associated with diseases and conditions, such as, but not limited to, fibrotic diseases or conditions resulting in scar formation, cellulite, Dupuytren's syndrome, Peyronie's disease, frozen shoulder, localized scleroderma, lymphedema, Interstitial cystitis (IC), Telangrectase, Barrett's metaplasia, Pneumatosis cytoides intestinalis, collagenous colitis. For example, disfiguring conditions of the skin, such as wrinkling, cellulite formation and neoplastic fibrosis result from excessive collagen deposition, which produces unwanted binding and distortion of normal tissue architecture.

Activatable matrix-degrading enzymes described herein, including but not limited to cathepsin L, can be used to treat collagen-mediated diseases or conditions. Exemplary of activatable matrix degrading enzymes for treatment of diseases and conditions described herein are those that are active at neutral pH, and require sustained acidic conditions for activity. For example, temporary acidification of the extracellular matrix, such as the skin interstitium, can be achieved by infusing a buffered acidic solution directly at the affected site. In one example, a buffered acid

solution can be administered via sub-epithelium administration, ie. under the skin, such that administration is effected directly at the site where ECM components are present and accumulated. Other methods of activation can be employed, and are known to one of skill in the art in view of the descriptions herein.

5 **a. Cellulite**

Activatable matrix-degrading enzymes, such as those described herein, including cathepsin L, can be used to treat cellulite. In normal adipose tissues, a fine mesh of blood vessels and lymph vessels supplies the tissue with necessary nutrients and oxygen, and takes care of the removal of metabolized products. For example, 10 triglycerides are stored in individual adipocytes that are grouped into capillary rich lobules. Each fat lobule is composed of adipocytes. Vertical strands of collagen fibers named fibrous septae separate the fat lobules and tether the overlying superficial fascia to the underlying muscle.

Cellulite is typically characterized by dermal deterioration due to a breakdown 15 in blood vessel integrity and a loss of capillary networks in the dermal and subdermal levels of the skin. The vascular deterioration tends to decrease the dermal metabolism. This decreased metabolism hinders protein synthesis and repair processes, which results in dermal thinning. The condition is further characterized by fat cells becoming engorged with lipids, swelling and clumping together, as well as 20 excess fluid retention in the dermal and subdermal regions of the skin. The accumulation of fat globules or adipose cells creates a need for a bigger blood supply to provide extra nourishment. To provide the blood to tissues, new capillaries are formed, which release more filtrate resulting in a saturation of tissues with interstitial fluid causing edema in the adipose tissues. Abundant reticular fibres in the interstitial 25 tissues accumulate and thicken around the aggregated adipose cells; they form capsules or septa, which gradually transform into collagen fibres and are felt as nodules. The formation of these septa further occludes fat cells. Collagen fibres are also laid down in the interstitial tissue spaces, rendering the connective tissue sclerotic (hard).

30 Hence, as the condition further progresses, hard nodules of fat cells and clumps of fats surrounded by septa form in the dermal region. This leads to the surface of the skin displaying considerable heterogeneity and being characterized as having a “cottage cheese” or “orange peel” appearance. The dimpling occurs when the fibrous septae that connect the skin to the dermis and deeper tissue layers tighten

and pull in the skin. Thus, the “orange peel” appearance of cellulite is due to the deformation of the fat lobules as a result of outward forces on the adipose tissue. The fat lobules can be large, for example up to 1 cm wide, and easily protrude into the overlying dermis, causing a visible deformation on the surface of the skin. The net
 5 result is the undulating appearance of the outer skin as the fat pushes upwards. As the connective septae run in the same direction as these outward forces, they can offer no counter force to keep the adipose from protruding into the dermis.

Cellulite is more prevalent among females than males. The prevalence of cellulite is estimated between 60% and 80% of the female population and its severity
 10 tends to worsen with obesity. Recently, a published study showed by *in vivo* magnetic resonance imaging that women with cellulite have a higher percentage of perpendicular fibrous septae than women without cellulite or men (Querleux *et al.*, (2002) *Skin Research and Technology*, 8:118-124). Cellulite occurs most often on the hips, thighs and upper arms. For example, premenopausal females tend to accumulate
 15 fat subcutaneously, primarily in the gluteal/thigh areas where cellulite is most common. Clinically, cellulite is accompanied by symptoms that include thinning of the epidermis, reduction and breakdown of the microvasculature leading to subdermal accumulations of fluids, and subdermal agglomerations of fatty tissues.

b. Dupuytren's Disease

20 Activatable matrix-degrading enzymes, such as those described herein, can be used to treat Dupuytren's syndrome. Dupuytren's contracture (also known as Morbus Dupuytren) is a fixed flexion contracture of the hand where the fingers bend towards the palm and cannot be fully extended. A similar lesion sometimes occurs in the foot. The connective tissue within the hand becomes abnormally thick and is accompanied
 25 by the presence of nodules containing fibroblasts and collagen, particularly type III collagen. The fibrous cord of collagen is often interspersed with a septa-like arrangement of adipose tissue. These present clinically as mattress-type “lumps” of varying sized and in Dupuytren's disease are termed nodules. This can cause the fingers to curl, and can result in impaired function of the fingers, especially the small
 30 and ring fingers. Dupuytren's disease occurs predominantly in men. It is generally found in middle aged and elderly persons, those of Northern European ancestry, and in those with certain chronic illnesses such as diabetes, alcoholism and smoking.

Dupuytren's disease is a slowly progressive disease that occurs over many years causing fixed flexion deformities in the metacarpophalangeal (MP) and

proximal interphalangeal (PIP) joints of the fingers. The small and ring fingers are the most often affected. The disease progresses through three stages (Luck et al. (1959) J. Bone Joint Surg., 41A:635-664). The initial proliferative stage is characterized by nodule formation in the palmar fascia in which a cell known as the myofibroblast appears and begins to proliferate. The involutinal or mid-disease stage involves myofibroblast proliferation and active type III collagen formation. In the last or residual phase, the nodule disappears leaving acellular tissue and thick bands of collagen. The ratio of type III collagen to type I collagen increases. Treatment of Dupuytren's disease with an activatable-matrix degrading enzyme is typically in the mid-disease and residual disease stages.

c. Peyronie's Disease

Activatable matrix-degrading enzymes, such as those described herein, can be used to treat Peyronie's disease. Peyronie's disease is a connective tissue disorder involving the growth of fibrous plaques in the soft tissue of the penis affecting as many as 1-4% of men. Collagen is the major component of the plaque in Peyronie's disease. Specifically, the fibrosing process occurs in the tunica albuginea, a fibrous envelope surrounding the penile corpora cavernosa. The pain and disfigurement associated with Peyronie's disease relate to the physical structure of the penis in which is found two erectile rods, called the corpora cavernosa, a conduit (the urethra) through which urine flows from the bladder, and the tunica which separates the cavernosa from the outer layers of skin of the penis. A person exhibiting Peyronie's disease will have formation(s) of plaque or scar tissue between the tunica and these outer layers of the skin (referred to as "sub-dermal" in this application). The scanning or plaque accumulation of the tunica reduces its elasticity causes such that, in the affected area, it will not stretch to the same degree (if at all) as the surrounding, unaffected tissues. Thus, the erect penis bends in the direction of the scar or plaque accumulation, often with associated pain of some degree. In all but minor manifestations of Peyronie's disease, the patient has some degree of sexual dysfunction. In more severe cases, sexual intercourse is either impossible, or is so painful as to be effectively prohibitive.

Empirical evidence indicates an incidence of Peyronie's disease in approximately one percent of the male population. Although the disease occurs mostly in middle-aged men, younger and older men can acquire it. About 30 percent of men with Peyronie's disease also develop fibrosis (hardened cells) in other elastic

tissues of the body, such as on the hand or foot. Common examples of such other conditions include Dupuytren's contracture of the hand and Ledderhose Fibrosis of the foot.

d. Ledderhose Fibrosis

5 Activatable matrix-degrading enzymes, such as those described herein, can be used to treat Ledderhose fibrosis. Ledderhose fibrosis is similar to Dupuytren's disease and Peyronie's disease, except that the fibrosis due to fibroblast proliferation and collagen deposition occurs in the foot. Ledderhose disease is characterized by
10 plantar fibrosis over the medial sole of the foot, and is sometimes referred to as plantar fibrosis.

e. Stiff joints

 Activatable matrix-degrading enzymes, such as those described herein, can be used to treat stiff joints, for example, frozen shoulder. Frozen shoulder (adhesive capsulitis) is a chronic fibrozing condition of the capsule of the joint characterized by
15 pain and loss of motion or stiffness in the shoulder. It affects about 2% of the general population. Frozen sholder results from increased fibroblast matrix synthesis. The sythesis is caused by an excessive inflammatory response resulting in the overproduction of cytokines and growth factors. Fibroblasts and myofibroblasts lay down a dense matrix of collagen in particular, type-I and type-III collagen within the
20 capsule of the shoulder. This results in a scarred contracted shoulder capsule and causes joint stiffness.

 Other examples of stiff joints include, but are not limited to, those caused by capsular contractures, adhesive capsulitis and arthrofibrosis, which result from musculoskeletal surgery. Such stiff joints can occur in joints, including, for example,
25 joints of the knees, shoulders, elbows, ankles and hips. Like frozen shoulder, such joint diseases are caused by increased matrix synthesis and scar formation. The stiff joints inevitably can cause abnormally high forces to be transmitted to the articular cartilage of the affected area. Over time, these forces result in the development of degenerative joint disease and arthritis. For example, in arthrofibrosis and capsular
30 contracture, fibroblasts form excessive amounts of matrnx in response to local trauma, such as joint dislocation.

f. Existing Scars

 Activatable matrix-degrading enzymes, such as those described herein, can be used to treat existing scars. Collagen is particularly important in the wound healing

process and in the process of natural aging, where it is produced by fibroblast cells. In some cases, however, an exaggerated healing response can result in the production of copious amounts of healing tissue (ground substance), also termed scar tissue. For example, various skin traumas such as burns, surgery, infection, wounds and accident
5 are often characterized by the erratic accumulation of fibrous tissue rich in collagen. There also is often an increased proteoglycan content. In addition to the replacement of the normal tissue that has been damaged or destroyed, excessive and disfiguring deposits of new tissue sometimes form during the healing process. The excess collagen deposition has been attributed to a disturbance in the balance between
10 collagen synthesis and collagen degradation. Including among scars are, for example, chronic tendinosis or scar tissue of the tendons, surgical adhesions, keloids, hypertrophic scars, and depressed scars.

i. Surgical adhesions

Surgical adhesions are attachments of organs or tissues to each other through
15 scar formation, which can cause severe clinical problems. The formation of some scar tissue after surgery or tissue injury is normal. In some cases, however, the scar tissue overgrows the region of injury and creates surgical adhesions, which tend to restrict the normal mobility and function of affected body parts. In particular, fibroblast proliferation and matrix synthesis is increased locally following such soft
20 tissue injury. Adhesions then form when the body attempts to repair tissue by inducing a healing response. For example, this healing process can occur between two or more otherwise healthy separate structures (such as between loops of bowel following abdominal surgery). Alternately, following local trauma to a peripheral nerve, fibrous adhesions can form, resulting in severe pain during normal movement.

25 ii. Keloids

Keloids are scars of connective tissue containing hyperplastic masses that occur in the dermis and adjacent subcutaneous tissue, most commonly following trauma. Keloids generally are fibrous nodules that can vary in color from pink or red to dark brown. Keloids form in scar tissue as a result of overgrowth of collagen,
30 which participates in wound repair. Keloid lesions are formed when local skin fibroblasts undergo vigorous hyperplasia and proliferation in response to local stimuli. The resulting lesion can result in a lump many times larger than the original scar. In addition to occur as a result of wound or other trauma, keloids also can form from

piercing, pimples, a scratch, severe acne, chickenpox scarring, infection at a wound site, repeated trauma to an area, or excessive skin tension during wound closure.

iii. Hypertrophic scars

Hypertrophic scars are raised scars that form at the site of wounds. They
5 generally do not grow beyond the boundaries of the original wound. Like keloid scars, hypertrophic scars are a result of the body overproducing collagen.

iv. Depressed scars

Depressed scars generally result from an inflammatory episode and are
characterized by contractions of the skin, and leave a cosmetically displeasing and
10 permanent scar. The most common example is scarring that occurs following inflammatory acne. The depression occurs as a normal consequence of wound healing, and the scar tissue causing the depression is predominantly made up of collagen resulting from fibroblast proliferation and metabolism.

g. Scleroderma

15 Activatable matrix-degrading enzymes, such as those described herein, can be used to treat scleroderma. Scleroderma is characterized by a thickening of the collagen. The more common form of the disease, localized scleroderma, affects only the skin, usually in just a few places, and sometimes the face. It is sometimes referred to as CREST syndrome. Symptoms include hardening of the skin and associated
20 scarring. The skin also appears reddish or scaly, and blood vessels can be more visible. In more serious cases, scleroderma can affect the blood vessels and internal organs. Diffuse scleroderma can be fatal as a result of heart, kidney lung or intestinal damage, due to musculoskeletal, pulmonary, gastrointestinal, renal and other complications.

25 The condition is characterized by collagen buildup leading to loss of elasticity. The overproduction of collagen has been attributed to autoimmune dysfunction, resulting in accumulation of T cells and production of cytokines and other proteins that stimulate collagen deposition from fibroblasts.

h. Lymphedema

30 Activatable matrix-degrading enzymes, such as those described herein, can be used to treat lymphedema. Lymphedema is an accumulation of lymphatic fluid that causes swelling in the arms and legs. Lymphedema can progress to include skin changes such as, for example, lymphostatic fibrosis, sclerosis and papillomas (benign skin tumors) and swelling. Tissue changes associated with lymphedema include

proliferation of connective tissue cells, such as fibroblasts, production of collagen fibers, an increase in fatty deposits and fibrotic changes. These changes occur first at the lower extremities, i.e. the fingers and toes. Lymphedema can be identified based on the degree of enlargement of the extremities. For example, one method to assess lymphedema is based on identification of 2-cm or 3-cm difference between four comparative points of the involved and uninvolved extremities.

i. Collagenous colitis

Activatable matrix-degrading enzymes, such as those described herein, can be used to treat collagenous colitis. Collagenous colitis was first described as chronic watery diarrhea (Lindstrom et al. (1976) Pathol. Eur., 11:87-89). Collagenous colitis is characterized by collagen deposition, likely resulting from an imbalance between collagen production by mucosal fibroblasts and collagen degradation. It results in secretory diarrhea. The incidence of collagenous colitis is similar to primary biliary cirrhosis. The disease has an annual incidence of 1.8 per 100,000 and a prevalence of 15.7 per 100,000, which is similar to primary biliary cirrhosis (12.8 per 100,000) and lower than ulcerative colitis (234 per 100,000), Crohn's disease (146 per 100,000) or celiac disease (5 per 100,000). In patients with chronic diarrhea, about 0.3 to 5% have collagenous colitis. Collagenous colitis is an inflammatory disease resulting in increased production of cytokines and other agents that stimulate the proliferation of fibroblasts, resulting in increased collagen accumulation.

J. EXAMPLES

The following examples are included for illustrative purposes only and are not intended to limit the scope of the invention.

EXAMPLE 1

Preparation of Activated Recombinant Cathepsin-L

Histidine (His)-tagged purified recombinant human cathepsin-L was purchased from R&D systems (Minneapolis, MN. Cat# 952-CY) and was formulated at a concentration of 0.9 mg/mL in 50 mM Acetate, pH 4.0, 100 mM NaCl. Aliquots of 500 μ L were stored at - 80°C until they were used.

Concentration and buffer exchange were performed on stored aliquots before use. Briefly, 2 mL of 0.9 mg/mL cathepsin-L was thawed on ice and 500 μ L transferred to 4 microcon centrifugal filter membrane tubes having a 30 KDa cut-off (Millipore; Bedford, MA, Cat#42410). The microcon tubes were spun at 9000 rpm

for 5 minutes resulting in a final volume of 50 μ l. 450 μ L of cold concentration buffer (100 mM Na-Formate pH 4, 100 mM NaCl, 5 mM DTT, 10 mM EDTA) was added to each micron tube. The addition of 5 mM DTT during processing converts cathepsin-L to a single chain protein of approximately 36 KDa as assessed by SDS-PAGE. The concentration and buffer exchange steps remove the inhibitory 10-16 KDa pro-peptide. In addition, the DTT and EDTA added during concentration and buffer exchange minimize proteolytic degradation of cathepsin-L. The centrifugation procedure was repeated three times. Tubes and concentration solutions were chilled to minimize degradation, since cathepsin-L is sensitive to temperature. After the final spin, the microcon tubes were inverted and the liquid was collected in the retentate cup by centrifugation at 5000 rpm for 5 minutes. The final volume recovered was 400 μ L, resulting in a five-fold concentration. The concentrated cathepsin-L was aliquoted in volumes of 67 μ L, which contained approximately 300 μ g of activated enzyme. Aliquots were stored at -80°C, and thawed on ice prior to use.

Before use, cathepsin-L was formulated at its optimal pH of 5 by adding one aliquot to 3 mL of MES buffer solution (2-(N-morpholino)ethanesulfonic acid) at pH 5, resulting in a final concentration of 100 μ g/mL of activated cathepsin-L. As a control, cathepsin-L was formulated in HEPES buffer at pH 7.4 where the enzyme is minimally active.

20

Example 2

Hydroxyproline Assay

A hydroxyproline assay was used to measure collagen content changes in skin samples following perfusion with cathepsin-L. While the hydroxyproline content of other proteins is negligible, collagen contains hydroxyproline at a concentration of 8% (TV. Burjanadze, Hydroxyproline content and location in relation to collagen thermal stability. Biopolymers 18: 4931-4938 (2002)). The hydroxyproline (HP) assay used was a modification of the procedure of Reddy and Enwemeka (Clinical Biochemistry 29:225-229 (1996)). In particular, the volumes of the reagents were modified for completion of the reaction in 8-well 0.2 mL strip tubes (Brandtech, Essex, CT) in a standard thermocycler (Eppendorf Mastercycler, Westbury, NY). All steps including hydrolyzation, acidification and detection with Ehrlich's reagent were carried out in the 0.2 mL tubes. All chemicals were purchased from Sigma (St. Louis, MO). Briefly, perfusate samples from perfusion experiments were extracted by precipitation with 5 volumes of 200 proof ethanol and centrifuged. The volumes of perfusate

30

collected were measured using 1 mL or 200 μ L pipettes. The perfusates were transferred to labeled 15 mL conical centrifuge tubes. The ethanol perfusate mixtures were stored in a -80°C freezer for 30 minutes before being centrifuged at 3000 rpm for 10 minutes in an Eppendorf swinging bucket centrifuge. Following

5 centrifugation, the precipitate was dissolved in 150-400 μ L of 2N NaOH depending on the size of the pellet. The supernatant was dried in a lyophilizer, and dissolved in 150-200 μ L of 2N NaOH. Following dissolution in NaOH, samples were transferred to 8-well strip tubes at a volume of 200 μ L or less per tube and hydrolyzed at 99°C for 12 hours in a thermocycler to allow for complete hydrolysis of collagen and

10 hydroxyproline release. Samples were acidified with concentrated HCl (5.2 μ L of HCl per every 25 μ L of hydrolyzed sample). 60 μ L of Chloramine-T (Sigma; Cat# C9887) were added to an equal volume of acidified hydrolysate to complete hydroxyproline oxidation. After complete oxidation, 120 μ L of Ehrlich's reagent (Sigma, Saint Louis, MO, Cat# 39070(Fluka)) was added and incubated at 65°C for

15 25 minutes, resulting in a purple color. The intensity of the coloration is dependent on the amount of hydroxyproline derived from the collagen released in the perfusate. Samples were read in the visible range at 550 nm in a Spectramax 2E plate reader (Molecular Devices, Sunnyvale, CA). A standard curve was established using purified hydroxyproline solution (Sigma, Saint Louis, MO, Cat# H54409), and

20 hydroxyproline content in skin samples were determined from the standard curve.

Example 3

Degradation of Collagen by Perfusion of Ex Vivo Rat Skin Explants with Activated Cathepsin-L

25 Skin explants (2 cm x 2 cm) were surgically removed from the dorsolateral site of 3-month old male Sprague-Dawley rats (Harlan Sprague Dawley, Indianapolis, IN) anesthetized with 2% isoflurane. Explants were pinned down with needles to a Styrofoam pad glued to a 100 mm Petri dish and kept at 37°C with a heating pad. Using an infusion pump (Thermo Orion, model M361, Boston, MA), 6 mL of a

30 solution containing MES buffer (2-(N-morpholino-ethanesulfonic acid) at pH 5 and rHuPH20 at 2500 Units/mL (rHuPH20 Halozyme internal manufacturing lot# 056-100; specific activity: 124,000 U/mL and protein content of 1.05 mg/mL) were first perfused for 35 minutes through the skin explants via a 27-gauge butterfly needle inserted into the dermal layer of the explants. After completion of the acidic

perfusion, the skin explants were perfused for approximately 30 minutes with or without 100 µg/mL of activated cathepsin-L in MES buffer, pH 5 or control cathepsin-L in HEPES buffer, pH 7.4. Fractions were collected by aspirating with a 200 µL micropipette and collecting the contents in 1.5 mL Eppendorf tubes at time intervals of 5-10 minutes during the entire perfusion procedure. The fractions were pooled in Eppendorf tubes and rapidly frozen until hydroxyproline (HP) analysis was performed as described in Example 2. The results of three different experiments show that HP levels were significantly increased only in samples perfused with activated cathepsin-L at the optimum pH of 5. Average (n=3) HP levels increased from less than 1 µg /mL of perfusate at approximately 6 minutes to more than 30 µg /mL of perfusate at approximately 30 minutes. None or little HP was measured in the perfusates from infusions with MES buffer pH 5 only; HEPES buffer pH 7.4 only; and control cathepsin-L at pH 7.4.

15

Example 4

Degradation of Collagen by Perfusion of Ex Vivo Pig Skin Explants with Activated Cathepsin-L

Three-month old female Yorkshire pigs (S and S Farm, Ramona, CA) were fasted overnight and anesthetized by intramuscular injection of Ketamine (20 mg/kg)/Xylazine (2 mg/kg) and atropine (0.04 mg/kg). Animals were then intubated and anesthesia was maintained with 2% inhaled isoflurane (Baxter, Deerfield, IL) in oxygen (Airgas, San Diego, CA). Whole skin explants (5 cm x 5 cm) were surgically removed from the back of the animals, placed in phosphate buffered saline (PBS) at 4°C, and used within 2 hours following excision. Perfusion of explants and hydroxyproline analysis were carried out essentially as described in Example 3, except that the pig skin explants were perfused with MES buffer pH 5, or MES buffer pH 5 containing 100 µg/ml of cathepsin-L without PH20. Initially, explants were perfused with 6 mL of MES buffer pH 5 for approximately 30 minutes, and fractions were collected every 5-10 minutes. Thereafter, explants were perfused with 3 mL of 100 µg/ml of Cathepsin-L in MES buffer pH 5 or buffer alone as a control collected every 5 minutes for approximately 25 minutes. HP analysis showed a time-dependent increase in HP levels in the samples perfused with Cathepsin-L. No detectable HP could be measured in samples perfused with MES buffer pH 5 without cathepsin-L.

Highest levels of HP were measured at time 15 minutes. HP levels measured at 25 minutes were similar to those measured at 15 minutes.

Example 5

5 **Decrease in Fibrous Septae in the Subcutaneous Space by Perfusion of Pig Explants with Activated Cathepsin-L**

Pig skin explants were processed essentially as described in Example 4 by perfusion with MES buffer, pH 5 containing 2500 U/mL rHuPH20, at a rate of 0.17 mL per minute for 30 minutes, followed by perfusion with 3 mL of 100 µg/ml cathepsin-L in MES buffer pH 5 without rHuPH20 at 0.12 mL/min for 25 minutes. Following infusion with cathepsin-L, the explants were trimmed into small pieces that were fixed in 4% buffered formalin overnight. Control untreated pig explants were processed similarly. Tissues were washed in PBS, dehydrated in graded ethanol and xylene solutions, and embedded in paraffin. Blocks were cut in 4 µm thin sections that were transferred to microscope slides and stained with Mason Trichrome staining for visualization of collagen. Briefly, sections were deparaffinized, hydrated in distilled water and treated with mordant in Bouin's solution (Sigma, Cat #HT10-132) for 15 to 30 minutes at 56°C. The sections were cooled and washed in running water until the yellow color disappeared and rinsed in distilled water. The sections were then stained in Weigert's Iron Hematoxylin Working solution (Sigma Cat # HT107 and HT109) for 5 minutes and washed in running water for 10 minutes. Sections were rinsed in deionized water for 5 minutes and placed in Biebrich Scarlet-Acid Fuchsin (Sigma, Cat # HT151) for 5 minutes. The sections were transferred to Working Phosphotungstic/Phosphomolybdic Acid solution (Sigma Cat # HT152 and HT153) and finally stained in Aniline Blue Solution (Sigma Cat # HT154) for 5 minutes and differentiated in 1% Acetic Acid for 2 minutes. Sections were rinsed in distilled water, dehydrated in 95% alcohol and absolute alcohol, and cleared in xylene with two changes. Sections were mounted and observed in a Nikon inverted microscope. Images were obtained using a 20x objective in a Nikon fluorescent microscope coupled to a camera scanner (Diagnostic Instrument Inc., Sterling Heights, MI) containing the SPOT advance imaging program. The hypodermis predominantly contains adipose tissue. Dense connective tissue strands made of collagen fibrous septae extend from the dermis deep into the hypodermis and anchor the skin to underlying structures. The histology results shows that fibrous septae

separating the fat cell chambers are visible throughout the hypodermis in the non-treated sample. Following treatment with Cathepsin-L in MES buffer, pH 5, the number of collagen fibrous septae was substantially lower than in untreated samples, indicating that treatment with cathepsin-L dramatically alters the collagen network organization in the hypodermis.

Example 6

Collagen Degradation in the Skin of Live Anesthetized Rats

Perfusion experiments were performed on three month old male Sprague-Dawley rats (Harlan Sprague-Dawley, Inc. Indianapolis, IN) kept under 2% isoflurane anesthesia. Perfusion experiments were performed using cathepsin-L at pH 5, and as a control for specificity, in HEPES buffer at pH 7.4. Briefly, using a infusion pump, about 15 mL of a solution containing either 25 mM MES buffer pH 5, or 25 mM HEPES buffer pH 7.4, and 2500 Units/ml of rHuPH20 (Halozyme internal manufacturing lot # 056-100 with specific activity of 124,000 U/mL and protein content of 1.05 mg/mL), were first perfused for approximately 60 minutes via the tail skin using a 27-gauge butterfly needle inserted into the dermal layer of the skin. Thereafter a 3 mL solution containing cathepsin-L or buffer control was perfused for 25 min. Cat-L containing perfusion solutions contained 100 µg /mL of activated Cat-L either at its optimum pH of 5 in 5 mM MES or at the control pH of 7.4 in 20 mM HEPES. The ionic strength of pH 5 buffer was reduced from 25 mM to 5 mM to facilitate neutralization of the pH by the local tissue environment and thereby limit the spread of the active enzyme. In case of Cat-L in HEPES buffer at pH7.4 an ionic strength of at least 20 mM was maintained to ensure that the added Cat-L, activated and formulated in a high ionic strength buffer at pH 4, would not substantially alter the pH of the HEPES buffer (pH7.4). A small aliquot of the Cat-L added to 20 mM HEPES pH 7.4 was checked with pH paper to ensure that pH of the resulting solution, after Cat-L has been added, was indeed close to pH 7.4. Buffer control solutions used for perfusion were 5 mM MES pH 5 or 20 mM HEPES pH 7.4, with no added enzyme. Perfusate fractions were collected from the tail skin at regular time intervals, i.e at 20, 40 and 60 minutes during the initial perfusion and at 8 and 25 minutes during perfusion with Cat-L. The fractions were pooled in Eppendorf tubes and rapidly frozen to prevent further enzymatic action. Hydroxyproline analysis was performed as described in Example 2. The results show that HP could be measured only in the samples perfused with activated cathepsin-L. The highest levels of HP

were measured in the 25 minute perfusate samples. There was no detectable HP in the samples perfused with MES buffer pH 5 only, or with HEPES buffer pH 7.4 only, or with cathepsin-L in HEPES buffer pH 7.4.

5

Example 7

Return to Neutrality Following Acidification of the Skin in a Live Rat

When a dilute aqueous acid solution is injected into the skin interstitium, the change in pH is temporary and the neutral skin pH is rapidly restored due to the significant buffering capacity of interstitium. Phenol red was used as a visual
 10 indicator of interstitial pH. The sodium salt of phenol red is widely used in cell culture medium to identify changes from neutral to acidic pH values. A solution of phenol red has a yellow color at a pH of 6.4 or below, orange color at pH 7.0, red color at pH 7.4 and above, and purple color at pH 7.8.

Three month old male Sprague-Dawley rats (Harlan Sprague Dawley,
 15 Indianapolis, IN) were kept under 2% isoflurane anesthesia. Skin was shaven for easy visualization of phenol red dye. 2-2.5 mL of 25 mM MES, pH 5 containing 500 U/ml of rHuPH20 were perfused into the tail skin via a 27-gauge butterfly needle inserted into the dermal layer. This was followed by a solution of 1-1.5 mL of 0.05% phenol red (Sigma-Aldrich, St. Louis, MO, Cat # P0290) in 10 mM, 25 mM, 50 mM
 20 and 100 mM MES buffer, pH 5. MES (2-(N-morpholino-ethanesulfonic acid (C₁₆H₁₃NO₄A)) has a molecular weight of 195.2). No rHuPH20 was included in the phenol red solution. Using microcalipers, the phenol red front was measured at different time points, in two dimensions, and the areas were calculated using the formula: Area = (D1 x D2) x $\pi/4$. The change in color was observed and time to
 25 return to neutrality was recorded. The results of Table 4 summarize the average time in minutes to return to neutrality and indicate that return to neutrality can be modulated by the ionic strength of the buffer.

Table 4 - Average time to neutrality

Buffer strength solution in mM	Initial area of Phenol Red	% reduction after 5 minutes	% reduction after 10 minutes	% reduction after 15 minutes	% reduction after 20 minutes	Average time to neutrality In min
--------------------------------	----------------------------	-----------------------------	------------------------------	------------------------------	------------------------------	-----------------------------------

id MES						
10; n=3	80	71	86	98	-	10
25; n=3	123	59	78	91	-	10
50; n=2	115	38	100	100	-	10
100; n=2	191	15	38	55	71	20

Example 8

Engineering of Recombinant Recombinant Human Liver Cathepsin-L

Human Cat-L cDNA SEQ ID NO: 9 (encoded by a sequence of nucleotides set forth in SEQ ID NO:10) and Cat-L-His cDNA SEQ ID NO: 12 (encoded by a sequence of nucleotides set forth in SEQ ID NO:13), were PCR amplified from human liver cDNA (Clonetech QUICK-Clone cDNA 637205) using primers that were designed according to the published sequence data for human kidney procathepsin L cDNA. 5' NheI and 3' BamHI restriction sites were added as part of the PCR primer synthesis. The primers used in the amplification are set forth in Table 5.

TABLE 5: Primers

	Primer	Sequence	SEQ ID NO	Tm	length	Match length
Human Cat- L	5'	5'- AAGGCCGCTAGCCACCATGGATC CTACACTCATCCTTGCTGC-3'	16	64°C	42 mer	22
	3' (with two stop codons)	5'- GAGCACGGATCCTCATCACACAG TGGGGTAGCTGG-3'	17	65°C	35 mer	20
Cat-L-His	5'	5'- AAGGCCGCTAGCCACCATGGATC CTACACTCATCCTTGCTGC-3'	16	64°C	42 mer	22
	3' (with 6xHis tag)	5'- CCTGCCGGATCCTCAATGATGATG ATGATGATGCACAGTGGGGTAGC TG-3'	18	57°C	49 mer	16

Both cDNA based constructs have the second amino acid of the native Cat-L secretory leader peptide mutated by a single base to form a consensus Kozak sequence, thereby changing the second amino acid from N to D (as set forth in SEQ ID NO: 9 and 12) . The identity of the clones was verified by standard agarose gel electrophoresis and DNA sequencing analysis

The resulting amplified product was introduced for cloning into the HZ24 (b/s) expression vector. The expression vector is a CMV-based bi-cistronic cassette for expression of both the cathepsin-L protein and the murine DHFR gene separated by an internal ribosomal entry site (IRES) from the encephalomyocarditis virus. The resulting sequence of the HZ24-Cat-L expression vector is set forth in SEQ ID NO:11. The resulting sequence of the HZ24-Cat-L-His expression vector is set forth in SEQ ID NO:14.

Both Cat-L and Cat-L-His expression plasmids were introduced into CHO-S cells (CHO-K1 cells adapted to serum free suspension culture, Invitrogen, Carlsbad, CA, cat # 11619-012) by transfection using Genejuice transfection reagent (EMD Biosciences, San Diego, CA, cat # 70967). The expression plasmids also were introduced into DG44 CHO cells (obtained by license from Dr. Lawrence Chasin, Columbia University), which were adapted to grow in suspension culture in a chemically defined, animal product-free medium (Invitrogen, Cat # 10743-029) by electroporation. For electroporation, greater than 100 µg of ClaI linearized plasmid was used for each electroporation of each of the plasmids. Twenty million DG44 CHO cells per electroporation, at 350 Volts constant voltage were transfected. The electroporation buffer contained 2X HeBS (40 mM HEPES, pH 7.0; 274 mM NaCl; 10 mM KCl; 1.4 mM Na₂HPO₄; 12 mM dextrose). Transfected cells were cloned by limiting dilution 72 hours after electroporation in standard CD-CHO media (Invitrogen #12610-010) without sodium hypoxanthine and thymidine to select for cells carrying the DHFR plasmid. Selected clones growing without sodium hypoxanthine and thymidine were further sub-cloned, with amplification using methotrexate to increase insert copy number. A mock transfection served as a negative control.

Supernatants were harvested 72 hours post transfection and spun at 1500 rpm for 5 minutes. Cell free supernatants from CHO-S and CHO-DG44 cells transfected

with his-Cat-L, Cat-L and mock were applied to 10kDa cutoff micron centrifugal concentrators (Millipore; Bedford, MA. Cat# 42407) and concentrated approximately 10-fold by centrifugation at 12000 rpm at 4° C. Recombinant Human Cathepsin-L secreted into tissue culture supernatants was screened by capture ELISA (Calbiochem Cathepsin L ELISA Kit #QIA94), Western Blot analysis using the monoclonal Mab 33/1 (Bender MedSystems, Burlingame, CA) as described in Example 10 and for enzymatic activity using the fluorescent peptide substrate (Z-L-R-AMC) as described in Example 9.

Example 9

10 Determination of Enzymatic Activity of cathepsin L using a fluorogenic peptide substrate

Enzymatic activity of cathepsin-L was assayed using a commercially available fluorogenic substrate, designated as Z-Leu-Arg-AMC (Z=:N-carbobenzyloxy; AMC: 7-Amino-4-Methyl Coumarin, R&D Systems, Minneapolis, MN, Cat# ES008). The peptide substrate contains a highly fluorescent 7-amino-4-methyl coumarin group (AMC) that is quenched by the amide bond formed between its amino group and the carboxyl group of the Arg residue. Activated cathepsin-L cleaves this amide bond resulting in an increase in released fluorescence. While the peptide substrate can be cleaved by other cathepsins, prominent among which is cathepsin B, cathepsin-L activity was specifically determined by using suitable specific inhibitors for the cathepsin B and measuring activity in the presence and absence of the inhibitor. Specifically the selective cathepsin-B inhibitor CA-074 (Calbiochem, San Diego, CA, Cat# 205530) was used at a final concentration of 1 μ M and samples were assayed in presence and absence of CA-074. Cell culture supernatants from 72 hours post transfection in CHO cells were adjusted to pH 5 by adding concentrated MES buffer at pH 5 and incubated on ice for 30 minutes. This acid activation step cleaves the pro-peptide and generates mature cathepsin-L. To dilute the propeptide fragment which is a potent inhibitor of cathepsin-L enzyme activity (Carmona, E. et al. Potency and selectivity of the cathepsin L propeptide as an inhibitor of cysteine proteases. Biochemistry 35: 8149-8157 (1996)), the samples were concentrated and buffer exchanged with 50 mM MES pH5 buffer on a 30 KDa microcon tube three times. Samples were then assayed for enzyme activity by the fluorogenic peptide substrate assay on the Z-AMC substrate,

A commercial preparation of cathepsin L (R&D Systems; Cat# 952-CY) was activated in a manner similar to that of the samples, and was used as a standard by serial dilution. Following activation, samples and standards were serially diluted in 100 mM MES buffer pH 5 containing 5 mM DTT and 10 mM EDTA, in an opaque
5 bottom microplate and incubated with the fluorogenic peptide substrate Z-AMC at 37°C for 30 minutes. Z-AMC substrate was used at a final concentration of 10 µM in a total volume of 200 µL when combined with samples or standards.

The resulting fluorescence was read at the recommended optimum excitation-emission (380 nm-460 nm) band for the substrate in a fluorescent plate reader
10 (Molecular Devices, SpectraMax 3, Sunnyvale, CA). Sample values were derived from the standard curve drawn from the relative fluorescence unit (RFU) values obtained from the dilution series of the standard. After a 4-parameter fit with the Softmax® software (Molecular Devices, SpectraMax 3, Sunnyvale, CA), the standard curve was pseudo-linear between the concentration ranges of 10-100 ng/mL. The
15 results are shown in Table 6 below. The activity of cathepsin-L from CHO-S transfected cells was at least 10-20 fold higher than background activity from mock transfected host cells and by assaying in presence of the selective cathepsin-B inhibitor CA-074. The increased enzymatic activity in cathepsin-L transfected tissue culture medium can thus be assigned to Cat-L specific activity.

20

Table 6: Cat-L enzyme activity measurements in presence of cathepsin-B inhibitor by Z-AMC assay in transfected cells 72 hours post transfection			
Clone description	Mock transfected CHO-S	Cat-L transfected CHO-S	His Cat-L transfected CHO-S
ng/mL of Cat-L activity	20	723	248

Example 10

Western Blot Analysis of Expressed Human Recombinant Cathepsin-L

Following expression and concentration of cell free supernatants as described
25 in Example 8, Western Blot analysis was performed to confirm expression. Briefly, for each of the 6 different samples (cat-L, cat-L-His and mock from each of CHO-S or CHO-DG44 cells), 30 µL of concentrated supernatants were mixed with 10 µL of 4X (instead of gel loading sample buffer) for SDS-PAGE (EMD Bioscience, San Diego, CA, cat# 70607-3) and 2 µL of 100 mM DTT and incubated at 80°C for 20 minutes.

As a positive control, 750 ng of commercial purified recombinant cathepsin-L (R&D Systems) in 30 μ L of 1X PBS was included and processed identically. The total volume (42 μ L) of samples were loaded onto 4-20% Tris-Glycine gels (Invitrogen, Carlsbad, CA, Cat# EC6028BOX) and electrophoresis was carried out in Tris-Glycine SDS running buffer until the dye front of the prestained molecular weight marker (Invitrogen, Cat# LC5925) reached the bottom of the gel. The proteins were transferred onto PVDF membrane by the I-Blot semi dry blotting apparatus (Invitrogen, Cat# IB1001) according to manufacturer's instructions. Transfer was verified by the almost complete absence of color of the prestained marker bands on the gel. The membrane was blocked in blocker buffer consisting of 5% non fat dry milk in PBS for 2 hours at room temperature. Cathepsin-L was detected with a mouse monoclonal antibody (Mab 33/1) to human cathepsin L (Bender MedSystems, Burlingame, CA, Cat# BMS 166) used at 1 μ g/mL final concentration in blocker and incubated overnight at 4°C followed by a HRP conjugated goat anti-mouse IgG (Calbiochem, San Diego, CA, Cat# DC02L) used at a concentration of 33 ng/mL in blocker for 1 hr at room temperature. The HRP signal was developed by the TMB Insoluble (Calbiochem, Cat# 613548) membrane development solution and the reaction was stopped after 30 minutes at room temperature.

Western blot analysis showed protein bands specific for Cat-L. No specific band was detected in the mock transfected cells. The expression level of Cat-L and His-Cat-L appeared to be higher in CHO-S cells than in DG44 cells, probably due to transfection efficiency in the two cell lines. The Western blot analysis results were consistent with results using enzyme activity assay with the fluorogenic peptide substrate Z-AMC as described in Example 9. The molecular weight of cathepsin-L expressed in CHO-S and DG44 is 44-45 KDa which corresponds to the expected size of the protein still containing the propeptide. The molecular weight of commercial cathepsin used as a positive control (R&D Systems) was 36 KDa for mature cathepsin-L. The difference in size between the protein expressed in transfected CHO-S and CHO-DG44 cells and the commercial cathepsin-L may be due to different host cell specific glycosylation or to the removal of the propeptide from the commercial Cat-L.

Example 11

Generation of Synthetic Cathepsin-L and Cathepsin-L-His

A DNA construct encoding mature human cathepsin L, (amino acids 18-333 of GenBank Accession No. EAW62736; SEQ ID NO:1) was synthesized using codon optimization for CHO cells. Codon optimization was based on codon optimization table for *Cricetulus griseus*, listed by Blue Heron Biotech (www.blueheronbio.com).

5 The construct was synthesized to contain a heterologous signal peptide designed from the human kappa IgG gene family (SEQ ID NO:2) to permit secretion of the recombinant protein into tissue culture supernatant. The sequence of the optimized cathepsin-L construct is set forth in SEQ ID NO: 3 and encodes a polypeptide set forth in SEQ ID NO:4. A 5' NheI and a 3' BamHI restriction sites were added as part

10 of the construct synthesis, and was introduced for cloning into the HZ24 (b/s) expression vector (described in Example 8). The synthetic Cat-L expression vector is designated HZ24 (B/S) – CAT-L and is set forth in SEQ ID NO:5. A similar synthesized construct containing a C-terminal 6 Histidine tag separated by a linker (GGGGSG; SEQ ID NO:15) also was synthesized. The sequence of the synthesized

15 Cat-L-His construct is set forth in SEQ ID NO:6 and encodes a polypeptide set forth in SEQ ID NO:7. This construct also had a 5' NheI and a 3' BamHI restriction sites added as part of the construct synthesis, and was introduced for cloning into the HZ24 (b/s) expression vector. The synthetic Cat-L-His expression vector is designated HZ24 (B/S) – CAT-L-His and is set forth in SEQ ID NO: 8.

20 The synthetic Cat-L expression vector set forth in SEQ ID NO:5 and the synthetic Cat-L-His expression vector set forth in SEQ ID NO:8 were transfected into CHO-DG44 cells by electroporation as described in Example 8. Supernatants were harvested for 72 hours post-transfection and were processed as described in Example 8 (without pH adjustment) to generate non-activated Cathepsin-L. Tissue culture

25 supernatants also were processed with adjustment of pH 4 for activation of Cathepsin followed by concentration on 30 KDa membrane and analysis of Cathepsin L by Western Blot analysis. Briefly, at low pH, the pro-peptide of cathepsin-L is cleaved off resulting in the activation of the enzyme. Supernatants from cells transfected with the synthetic construct and un-transfected control cells were adjusted to pH 4 by

30 adding concentrated acidic buffer (1000 mM Formate pH 4, 1000 mM NaCl, 50 mM DTT, 100 mM EDTA) to the supernatants in a ratio of 1:10, respectively. The supernatants were incubated on ice for 30 minutes to allow for complete activation. They were concentrated by centrifuging through a 30 KDa molecular weight cutoff centrifugal concentration device (Microcon 30, Millipore, Bedford, MA. Cat#

42410). The 30 KDa cutoff size allows the cleaved propeptide (predicted size about 12-14 KDa) to pass through, whereas the mature protein was retained (predicted size about 36-40 kDa). Following concentration, activated (B) and non-activated supernatants (A) were run on a 4-12% SDS-PAGE gel followed by analysis by

5 Western Blot using the monoclonal Mab 33/1 as described in Example 10. Synthetic Cathepsin-L and Cat-His-L was detected in tissue culture supernatants of transfected cells at similar levels. The molecule weight of the non-activated supernatants was about 44 kDa, whereas for the activated supernatants was about 36 to 40 kDa due to the absence of the pro-peptide as a result of activation of the protein at the lower pH.

10 Non-activated supernatants also were screened for enzymatic activity using the fluorescent peptide substrate (Z-L-R-AMC) as described in Example 9. Cat-L enzyme activity was measured in the presence of the cathepsin-B inhibitor by Z-AMC assay in transfected CHO-DG44 cells 72 hours post transfection. The results are set forth in Table 7 below. The activity of cathepsin-L from CHO-DG44 transfected cells
15 72 hours post transfection was at least 5-10 fold higher than background activity from mock transfected host cells and by assaying in presence of the selective cathepsin-B inhibitor CA-074, the contribution from host cathepsin-B like enzyme activity was blocked. Thus the increased enzymatic activity in cathepsin-L transfected tissue culture medium can be assigned to Cat-L specific activity expressed from the
20 transfected Cat-L clones.

TABLE: 7			
Clone description	Mock transfected	Cat-L transfected	His Cat-L transfected
ng/mL of Cat-L activity	Less than 100	1700	600

EXAMPLE 12

Generation of a soluble recombinant human PH20 (rHuPH20) Expressing Cell

25 Line

The HZ24 plasmid (set forth in SEQ ID NO:224) was used to transfect Chinese Hamster Ovary (CHO cells). The DNA encoding the soluble rHuPH20 construct contains an NheI site and a Kozak consensus sequence prior to the DNA encoding the methionine at amino acid position 1 of the native signal leader of human
30 PH20 hyaluronidase, and a stop codon following the DNA encoding the tyrosine at

amino acid position 482 of human PH20 hyaluronidase, followed by a BamHI restriction site. The construct pCI-PH20-IRES-DHFR-SV40pa (HZ-24), therefore, results in a single mRNA species driven by the CMV promoter that encodes amino acids 1-482 of PH20 (set forth in SEQ ID NO:225) and amino acids 1-187 of the dihydrofolate reductase (set forth in SEQ ID NO:261), separated by an internal ribosomal entry site (IRES).

Non-transfected DG44 CHO cells were grown in GIBCO Modified CD-CHO media for DHFR(-) cells, supplemented with 4 mM Glutamax[™] and 18 ml Plurionic F68/L (Gibco), and were seeded at 0.5×10^6 cells/ml in a shaker flask in preparation for transfection. Cells were grown at 37° C in 5% CO₂ in a humidified incubator, shaking at 120 rpm. Exponentially growing non-transfected DG44 CHO cells were tested for viability prior to transfection.

Sixty million viable cells of the non-transfected DG44 CHO cell culture were pelleted and resuspended to a density of 2×10^7 cells in 0.7 mL of 2x transfection buffer (2x HeBS: 40 mM Hepes, pH 7.0, 274 mM NaCl, 10 mM KCl, 1.4 mM Na₂HPO₄, 12 mM dextrose). To each aliquot of resuspended cells, 0.09 mL (250 µg) of the linear HZ24 plasmid (linearized by overnight digestion with Cla I (New England Biolabs); linear HZ24 plasmid set forth in SEQ ID NO: 19) was added, and the cell/DNA solutions were transferred into 0.4 cm gap BTX (Gentronics) electroporation cuvettes at room temperature. A negative control electroporation was performed with no plasmid DNA mixed with the cells. The cell/plasmid mixes were electroporated with a capacitor discharge of 330 V and 960 µF or at 350 V and 960 µF.

The cells were removed from the cuvettes after electroporation and transferred into 5 mL of Modified CD-CHO media for DHFR(-) cells, supplemented with 4 mM Glutamine and 18 ml Plurionic F68/L (Gibco), and allowed to grow in a well of a 6-well tissue culture plate without selection for 2 days at 37° C in 5% CO₂ in a humidified incubator.

Two days post-electroporation, 0.5 mL of tissue culture media was removed from each well and tested for the presence of hyaluronidase activity (see Example 16). The results are set forth in Table 8 below.

<p>Table 8: Initial Hyaluronidase Activity of HZ24 Transfected DG44 CHO cells at 40 hours post-transfection</p>

	Dilution	Activity Units/ml
Transfection 1 330V	1 to 10	0.25
Transfection 2 350V	1 to 10	0.52
Negative Control	1 to 10	0.015

Cells from Transfection 2 (350V) were collected from the tissue culture well, counted and diluted to 1×10^4 to 2×10^4 viable cells per mL. A 0.1 mL aliquot of the cell suspension was transferred to each well of five, 96 well round bottom tissue culture plates. One hundred microliters of CD-CHO media (GIBCO) containing 4

5 hypoxanthine and thymidine supplements were added to the wells containing cells (final volume 0.2 mL).

Ten clones were identified from the 5 plates grown without methotrexate (see

10 Table 9).

Table 9	
Plate/Well ID	Relative Hyaluronidase
1C3	261
2C2	261
3D3	261
3E5	243
3C6	174
2G8	103
1B9	304
2D9	273
4D10	302

Six HZ24 clones were expanded in culture and transferred into shaker flasks as single cell suspensions. Clones 3D3, 3E5, 2G8, 2D9, 1E11, and 4D10 were plated

15 into 96-well round bottom tissue culture plates using a two-dimensional infinite dilution strategy in which cells were diluted 1:2 down the plate, and 1:3 across the plate, starting at 5000 cells in the top left hand well. Diluted clones were grown in a

background of 500 non-transfected DG44 CHO cells per well, to provide necessary growth factors for the initial days in culture. Ten plates were made per subclone, with 5 plates containing 50 nM methotrexate and 5 plates without methotrexate.

Clone 3D3 produced 24 visual subclones (13 from the no methotrexate treatment, and 11 from the 50 nM methotrexate treatment.) Significant hyaluronidase activity was measured in the supernatants from 8 of the 24 subclones (>50 Units/mL), and these 8 subclones were expanded into T-25 tissue culture flasks in the presence of 50 nM methotrexate where appropriate. Clone 3D3 50 nM was further expanded in 500 nM methotrexate giving rise to clones producing in excess of 1,000 Units/ml in shaker flasks (clone 3D35M; generation 1 or Gen1 3D35M).

Example 13

Production and Purification of Gen1 Human sPH20

A. 5 L Bioreactor Process

A vial of 3D35M was thawed and expanded from shaker flasks through 1 L spinner flasks in CD-CHO media (Invitrogen, Carlsbad Calif.) supplemented with 100 nM Methotrexate and GlutaMAX™-1 (Invitrogen). Cells were transferred from spinner flasks to a 5 L bioreactor (Braun) at an inoculation density of 4×10^5 viable cells per ml. Parameters were temperature Setpoint 37°C, pH 7.2 (starting Setpoint), with Dissolved Oxygen Setpoint 25% and an air overlay of 0-100 cc/min. At 168 hrs, 250 ml of Feed #1 Medium (CD CHO with 50 g/L Glucose) was added. At 216 hours, 250 ml of Feed #2 Medium (CD CHO with 50 g/L Glucose and 10 mM Sodium Butyrate) was added, and at 264 hours 250 ml of Feed #2 Medium was added. This process resulted in a final productivity of 1600 Units per ml with a maximal cell density of 6×10^6 cells/ml. The addition of sodium butyrate was to dramatically enhance the production of soluble rHuPH20 in the final stages of production.

Conditioned media from the 3D35M clone was clarified by depth filtration and tangential flow diafiltration into 10 mM Hepes pH 7.0. Soluble rHuPH20 was then purified by sequential chromatography on Q Sepharose (Pharmacia) ion exchange, Phenyl Sepharose (Pharmacia) hydrophobic interaction chromatography, phenyl boronate (Prometec) and Hydroxapatite Chromatography (Biorad, Richmond, CA).

Soluble rHuPH20 bound to Q Sepharose and eluted at 400 mM NaCl in the same buffer. The eluate was diluted with 2M ammonium sulfate to a final concentration of 500 mM ammonium sulfate and passed through a Phenyl Sepharose

(low sub) column, followed by binding under the same conditions to a phenyl boronate resin. The soluble rHuPH20 was eluted from the phenyl sepharose resin in Hepes pH 6.9 after washing at pH 9.0 in 50 mM bicine without ammonium sulfate. The eluate was loaded onto a ceramic hydroxyapatite resin at pH 6.9 in 5 mM
 5 potassium phosphate and 1 mM CaCl_2 and eluted with 80 mM potassium phosphate, pH 7.4 with 0.1 mM CaCl_2 .

The resultant purified soluble rHuPH20 possessed a specific activity in excess of 65,000 USP Units/mg protein by way of the microturbidity assay (Example 16) using the USP reference standard. Purified sPH20 eluted as a single peak from 24 to
 10 26 minutes from a Pharmacia 5RPC styrene divinylbenzene column with a gradient between 0.1% TFA/ H_2O and 0.1% TFA/90% acetonitrile/10% H_2O and resolved as a single broad 61 kDa band by SDS electrophoresis that reduced to a sharp 51 kDa band upon treatment with PNGASE-F. N-terminal amino acid sequencing revealed that the leader peptide had been efficiently removed.

15 **B. Upstream Cell Culture Expansion Process into 100 L Bioreactor Cell Culture**

A scaled-up process was used to separately purify soluble rHuPH20 from four different vials of 3D35M cell to produce 4 separate batches of sHuPH20; HUA0406C, HUA0410C, HUA0415C and HUA0420C. Each vial was separately expanded and
 20 cultured through a 125 L bioreactor, then purified using column chromatography. Samples were taken throughout the process to assess such parameters as enzyme yield. The description of the process provided below sets forth representative specifications for such things as bioreactor starting and feed media volumes, transfer cell densities, and wash and elution volumes. The exact numbers vary slightly with
 25 each batch, and are detailed in Tables 3 to 10.

Four vials of 3D35M cells were thawed in a 37°C water bath, CD CHO containing 100 nM methotrexate and 40 mL/L GlutaMAX was added and the cells were centrifuged. The cells were re-suspended in a 125 mL shake flask with 20 mL of fresh media and placed in a 37°C, 7% CO_2 incubator. The cells were expanded up to 40 mL in the 125 mL shake flask. When the cell density reached $1.5 - 2.5 \times 10^6$
 30 cells/mL, the culture was expanded into a 125 mL spinner flask in a 100 mL culture volume. The flask was incubated at 37°C, 7% CO_2 . When the cell density reached $1.5 - 2.5 \times 10^6$ cells/mL, the culture was expanded into a 250 mL spinner flask in 200 mL culture volume, and the flask was incubated at 37°C, 7% CO_2 . When the cell

density reached $1.5 - 2.5 \times 10^6$ cells/mL, the culture was expanded into a 1 L spinner flask in 800 mL culture volume and incubated at 37°C, 7% CO₂. When the cell density reached $1.5 - 2.5 \times 10^6$ cells/mL, the culture was expanded into a 6 L spinner flask in 5 L culture volume and incubated at 37°C, 7% CO₂. When the cell density
 5 reached $1.5 - 2.5 \times 10^6$ cells/mL, the culture was expanded into a 36 L spinner flask in 20 L culture volume and incubated at 37°C, 7% CO₂.

A 125 L reactor was sterilized with steam at 121°C, 20 PSI and 65 L of CD CHO media was added. Before use, the reactor was checked for contamination. When the cell density in the 36 L spinner flasks reached $1.8 - 2.5 \times 10^6$ cells/mL, 20 L
 10 cell culture were transferred from the 36L spinner flasks to the 125 L bioreactor (Braun), resulting a final volume of 85 L and a seeding density of approximately 4×10^5 cells/mL. Parameters were temperature setpoint, 37°C; pH: 7.2; Dissolved oxygen: 25% $\pm$ 10%; Impeller Speed 50 rpm; Vessel Pressure 3 psi; Air Sparge 1 L/min.; Air Overlay: 1 L/min. The reactor was sampled daily for cell counts, pH
 15 verification, media analysis, protein production and retention. Nutrient feeds were added during the run. At Day 6, 3.4 L of Feed #1 Medium (CD CHO + 50 g/L Glucose + 40 mL/L GlutaMAX™-1) was added, and culture temperature was changed to 36.5°C. At day 9, 3.5 L of Feed #2 (CD CHO + 50 g/L Glucose + 40 mL/L GlutaMAX™-1 + 1.1 g/L Sodium Butyrate) was added, and culture
 20 temperature was changed to 36°C. At day 11, 3.7 L of Feed #3 (CD CHO + 50 g/L Glucose + 40 mL/L GlutaMAX™-1 + 1.1 g/L Sodium Butyrate) was added, and the culture temperature was changed to 35.5°C. The reactor was harvested at 14 days or when the viability of the cells dropped below 50%. The process resulted in production of soluble rHuPH20 with an enzymatic activity of 1600 Units/ml with a
 25 maximal cell density of 8 million cells/mL. At harvest, the culture was sampled for mycoplasma, bioburden, endotoxin, and virus *in vitro* and *in vivo*, transmission electron microscopy (TEM) for viral particles, and enzyme activity.

The one hundred liter bioreactor cell culture harvest was filtered through a series of disposable capsule filters having a polyethersulfone medium (Sartorius): first
 30 through a 8.0 μ m depth capsule, a 0.65 μ m depth capsule, a 0.22 μ m capsule, and finally through a 0.22 μ m Sartopore 2000 cm² filter and into a 100 L sterile storage bag. The culture was concentrated 10 $\times$ using two TFF with Spiral Polyethersulfone 30 kDa MWCO filters (Millipore), followed by a 6 $\times$ buffer exchange with 10 mM HEPES, 25 mM Na₂SO₄, pH 7.0 into a 0.22 μ m final filter into a 20 L sterile storage

bag. Table 10 provides monitoring data related to the cell culture, harvest, concentration and buffer exchange steps.

Table 10. Monitoring data for cell culture, harvest, concentration and buffer exchange steps.

Parameter	HUA0406C	HUA04010C	HUA0415C	HUA0420C
Time from thaw to inoculate 100 L bioreactor (days)	21	19	17	18
100 L inoculation density ($\times 10^6$ cells/mL)	0.45	0.33	0.44	0.46
Doubling time in logarithmic growth (hr)	29.8	27.3	29.2	23.5
Max. cell density ($\times 10^6$ cells/mL)	5.65	8.70	6.07	9.70
Harvest viability (%)	41	48	41	41
Harvest titer (U/ml)	1964	1670	991	1319
Time in 100-L bioreactor (days)	13	13	12	13
Clarified harvest volume (mL)	81800	93300	91800	89100
Clarified harvest enzyme assay (U/mL)	2385	1768	1039	1425
Concentrate enzyme assay (U/mL)	22954	17091	8561	17785
Buffer exchanged concentrate enzyme assay (U/mL)	15829	11649	9915	8679
Filtered buffer exchanged concentrate enzyme assay (U/mL)	21550	10882	9471	8527
Buffer exchanged concentrate volume(mL)	10699	13578	12727	20500
Ratio enzyme units concentration/harvest	0.87	0.96	1.32	1.4

5

A Q Sepharose (Pharmacia) ion exchange column (3 L resin, Height = 20 cm, Diameter = 14 cm) was prepared. Wash samples were collected for a determination of pH, conductivity and endotoxin (LAL) assay. The column was equilibrated with 5 column volumes of 10 mM Tris, 20 mM Na₂SO₄, pH 7.5. The concentrated, diafiltered harvest was loaded onto the Q column at a flow rate of 100 cm/hr. The column was washed with 5 column volumes of 10 mM Tris, 20 mM Na₂SO₄, pH 7.5 and 10 mM Hepes, 50 mM NaCl, pH 7.0. The protein was eluted with 10 mM Hepes, 400 mM NaCl, pH 7.0 and filtered through a 0.22 μ m final filter into a sterile bag.

Phenyl-Sepharose (Pharmacia) hydrophobic interaction chromatography was next performed. A Phenyl-Sepharose (PS) column (9.1 L resin, Height = 29 cm, Diameter = 20cm) was prepared. The column was equilibrated with 5 column volumes of 5 mM potassium phosphate, 0.5 M ammonium sulfate, 0.1 mM CaCl₂, pH 7.0. The protein eluate from above was supplemented with 2M ammonium sulfate, 1

M potassium phosphate and 1 M CaCl_2 stock solutions to final concentrations of 5 mM, 0.5 M and 0.1 mM, respectively. The protein was loaded onto the PS column at a flow rate of 100 cm/hr. 5 mM potassium phosphate, 0.5 M ammonium sulfate and 0.1 mM CaCl_2 pH 7.0 was added at 100 cm/hr. The flow through was passed through
 5 a 0.22 μm final filter into a sterile bag.

The PS-purified protein was the loaded onto an aminophenyl boronate column (ProMedics) (6.3 L resin, Height = 20 cm, Diameter = 20cm) that had been equilibrated with 5 column volumes of 5 mM potassium phosphate, 0.5 M ammonium sulfate. The protein was passed through the column at a flow rate of 100 cm/hr, and
 10 the column was washed with 5 mM potassium phosphate, 0.5 M ammonium sulfate, pH 7.0. The column was then washed with 20 mM bicine, 100 mM NaCl, pH 9.0 and the protein eluted with 50 mM Hepes, 100 mM NaCl pH 6.9 through a sterile filter and into a 20 L sterile bag. The eluate was tested for bioburden, protein concentration and enzyme activity.

15 A hydroxyapatite (HAP) column (BioRad) (1.6 L resin, Height = 10 cm, Diameter = 14 cm) was equilibrated with 5 mM potassium phosphate, 100 mM NaCl, 0.1 mM CaCl_2 pH 7.0. Wash samples were collected and tested for pH, conductivity and endotoxin (LAL assay). The aminophenyl boronate purified protein was supplemented with potassium phosphate and CaCl_2 to yield final concentrations of 5
 20 mM potassium phosphate and 0.1 mM CaCl_2 and loaded onto the HAP column at a flow rate of 100 cm/hr. The column was washed with 5 mM potassium phosphate pH 7.0, 100 mM NaCl, 0.1 mM CaCl_2 , then 10 mM potassium phosphate pH 7.0, 100 mM NaCl, 0.1 mM CaCl_2 pH. The protein was eluted with 70 mM potassium phosphate pH 7.0 and filtered through a 0.22 μm filter into a 5 L sterile storage bag.
 25 The eluate was tested for bioburden, protein concentration and enzyme activity.

The HAP-purified protein was then pumped through a 20 nM viral removal filter via a pressure tank. The protein was added to the DV20 pressure tank and filter (Pall Corporation), passing through an Ultipor DV20 Filter with 20 nm pores (Pall Corporation) into a sterile 20 L storage bag. The filtrate was tested for protein
 30 concentration, enzyme activity, oligosaccharide, monosaccharide and sialic acid profiling, and process-related impurities. The protein in the filtrate was then concentrated to 1 mg/mL using a 10 kD molecular weight cut off (MWCO) Sartocoon Slice tangential flow filtration (TFF) system (Sartorius). The filter was first prepared by washing with a Hepes/saline solution (10 mM Hepes, 130 mM NaCl, pH 7.0) and

- the permeate was sampled for pH and conductivity. Following concentration, the concentrated protein was sampled and tested for protein concentration and enzyme activity. A 6× buffer exchange was performed on the concentrated protein into the final buffer: 10 mM Hepes, 130 mM NaCl, pH 7.0. The concentrated protein was
- 5 passed through a 0.22 µm filter into a 20 L sterile storage bag. The protein was sampled and tested for protein concentration, enzyme activity, free sulfhydryl groups, oligosaccharide profiling and osmolality.

Tables 11 to 17 provide monitoring data related to each of the purification steps described above, for each 3D35M cell lot.

10 **Table 11. Q sepharose column data**

Parameter	HUA0406C	HUA0410C	HUA0415C	HUA0420C
Load volume (mL)	10647	13524	12852	20418
Load Volume/Resin Volume ratio	3.1	4.9	4.5	7.3
Column Volume (mL)	2770	3840	2850	2880
Eluate volume (mL)	6108	5923	5759	6284
Protein Conc. of Eluate (mg/mL)	2.8	3.05	2.80	2.86
Eluate Enzyme Assay (U/mL)	24493	26683	18321	21052
Enzyme Yield (%)	65	107	87	76

Table 12. Phenyl Sepharose column data

Parameter	HUA0406C	HUA0410C	HUA0415C	HUA0420C
Volume Before Stock Solution Addition (mL)	5670	5015	5694	6251
Load Volume (mL)	7599	6693	7631	8360
Column Volume (mL)	9106	9420	9340	9420
Load Volume/Resin Volume ratio	0.8.	0.71	0.82	0.89
Eluate volume (mL)	16144	18010	16960	17328
Protein Cone of Eluate (mg/mL)	0.4	0.33	0.33	0.38
Eluate Enzyme Assay (U/mL)	8806	6585	4472	7509
Protein Yield (%)	41	40	36	37
Enzyme Yield (%)	102	88	82	96

Table 13. Amino Phenyl Boronate column data

Parameter	HUA0406C	HUA0410C	HUA0415C	HUA0420C
Load Volume (mL)	16136	17958	16931	17884
Load Volume/Resin Volume ratio	2.99	3.15	3.08	2.98
Column Volume (mL)	5400	5700	5500	5300
Eluate volume (mL)	17595	22084	20686	19145

Protein Conc. of Eluate (mg/mL)	0.0	0.03	0.03	0.04
Protein Conc. of Filtered Eluate (mg/mL)	not tested	0.03	0.00	0.04
Eluate Enzyme Assay (U/mL)	4050	2410	1523	4721
Protein Yield (%)	0	11	11	12
Enzyme Yield (%)	not determined	41	40	69

Table 14. Hydroxyapatite column data

Parameter	HUA0406C	HUA0410C	HUA0415C	HUA0420C
Volume Before Stock Solution Addition (mL)	16345	20799	20640	19103
Load Volume/Resin Volume ratio	10.95	13.58	14.19	12.81
Column Volume (mL)	1500	1540	1462	1500
Load volume (mL)	16429	20917	20746	19213
Eluate volume (mL)	4100	2415	1936	2419
Protein Conc. of Eluate (mg/mL)	not tested	0.24	0.17	0.23
Protein Conc. of Filtered Eluate (mg/mL)	NA	NA	0.17	NA
Eluate Enzyme Assay (U/mL)	14051	29089	20424	29826
Protein Yield (%)	Not tested	93	53	73
Enzyme Yield (%)	87	118	140	104

Table 15. DV20 filtration data

Parameter	HUA0406C	HUA0410C	HUA0415C	HUA0420C
Start volume (mL)	4077	2233	1917	2419
Filtrate Volume (mL)	4602	3334	2963	3504
Protein Conc. of Filtrate (mg/mL)	0.1	NA	0.09	NA
Protein Conc. of Filtered Eluate (mg/mL)	NA	0.15	0.09	0.16
Protein Yield (%)	not tested	93	82	101

5

Table 16. Final concentration data

Parameter	HUA0406C	HUA0410C	HUA0415C	HUA0420C
Start volume (mL)	4575	3298	2963	3492
Concentrate Volume (mL)		562	407	237
Protein Conc. of Concentrate (mg/mL)	0.9	1.24	1.16	1.73
Protein Yield (%)	Not tested	111	102	103
Start volume (mL)	4575	3298	2963	3492

Table 17. Buffer Exchange into Final Formulation data

Parameter	HUA0406C	HUA0410C	HUA0415C	HUA0420C
-----------	----------	----------	----------	----------

Start Volume (mL)	562	407	237	316
Final Volume Buffer Exchanged Concentrate (mL)	594	516	310	554
Protein Conc. of Concentrate (mg/mL)	1.00	0.97	0.98	1.00
Protein Conc. of Filtered Concentrate (mg/mL)	0.95	0.92	0.95	1.02
Protein Yield (%)	118	99	110	101

The purified and concentrated soluble rHuPH20 protein was aseptically filled into sterile vials with 5 mL and 1 mL fill volumes. The protein was passed through a 0.22 μ m filter to an operator controlled pump that was used to fill the vials using a gravimetric readout. The vials were closed with stoppers and secured with crimped caps. The closed vials were visually inspected for foreign particles and then labeled. Following labeling, the vials were flash-frozen by submersion in liquid nitrogen for no longer than 1 minute and stored at $\leq -15^{\circ}\text{C}$ ($-20 \pm 5^{\circ}\text{C}$).

EXAMPLE 14

10 **Production Gen2 Cells Containing Soluble human PH20 (rHuPH20)**

The Gen1 3D35M cell line described in Example 12 was adapted to higher methotrexate levels to produce generation 2 (Gen2) clones. 3D35M cells were seeded from established methotrexate-containing cultures into CD CHO medium containing 4mM GlutaMAX-1™ and 1.0 μ M methotrexate. The cells were adapted to a higher methotrexate level by growing and passaging them 9 times over a period of 46 days in a 37°C, 7% CO₂ humidified incubator. The amplified population of cells was cloned out by limiting dilution in 96-well tissue culture plates containing medium with 2.0 μ M methotrexate. After approximately 4 weeks, clones were identified and clone 3E10B was selected for expansion. 3E10B cells were grown in CD CHO medium containing 4 mM GlutaMAX-1™ and 2.0 μ M methotrexate for 20 passages. A master cell bank (MCB) of the 3E10B cell line was created and frozen and used for subsequent studies.

Amplification of the cell line continued by culturing 3E10B cells in CD CHO medium containing 4 mM GlutaMAX-1™ and 4.0 μ M methotrexate. After the 12th passage, cells were frozen in vials as a research cell bank (RCB). One vial of the RCB was thawed and cultured in medium containing 8.0 μ M methotrexate. After 5 days, the methotrexate concentration in the medium was increased to 16.0 μ M, then 20.0 μ M 18 days later. Cells from the 8th passage in medium containing 20.0 μ M

methotrexate were cloned out by limiting dilution in 96-well tissue culture plates containing CD CHO medium containing 4 mM GlutaMAX-1™ and 20.0 μM methotrexate. Clones were identified 5-6 weeks later and clone 2B2 was selected for expansion in medium containing 20.0 μM methotrexate. After the 11th passage, 2B2
 5 cells were frozen in vials as a research cell bank (RCB).

The resultant 2B2 cells are dihydrofolate reductase deficient (dhfr-) DG44 CHO cells that express soluble recombinant human PH20 (rHuPH20). The soluble PH20 is present in 2B2 cells at a copy number of approximately 206 copies/cell. Southern blot analysis of Spe I-, Xba I- and BamH I/Hind III-digested genomic 2B2
 10 cell DNA using a rHuPH20-specific probe revealed the following restriction digest profile: one major hybridizing band of ~7.7 kb and four minor hybridizing bands (~13.9, ~6.6, ~5.7 and ~4.6 kb) with DNA digested with Spe I; one major hybridizing band of ~5.0 kb and two minor hybridizing bands (~13.9 and ~6.5 kb) with DNA digested with Xba I; and one single hybridizing band of ~1.4 kb observed using 2B2
 15 DNA digested with BamH I/Hind III.

Example 15

A. Production of Gen2 soluble rHuPH20 in 300 L Bioreactor Cell Culture

A vial of HZ24-2B2 was thawed and expanded from shaker flasks through
 20 36L spinner flasks in CD-CHO media (Invitrogen, Carlsbad, CA) supplemented with 20 μM methotrexate and GlutaMAX-1™ (Invitrogen). Briefly, the a vial of cells was thawed in a 37°C water bath, media was added and the cells were centrifuged. The cells were re-suspended in a 125 mL shake flask with 20 mL of fresh media and placed in a 37°C, 7% CO₂ incubator. The cells were expanded up to 40 mL in the 125
 25 mL shake flask. When the cell density reached greater than 1.5×10^6 cells/mL, the culture was expanded into a 125 mL spinner flask in a 100 mL culture volume. The flask was incubated at 37°C, 7% CO₂. When the cell density reached greater than 1.5×10^6 cells/mL, the culture was expanded into a 250 mL spinner flask in 200 mL culture volume, and the flask was incubated at 37°C, 7% CO₂. When the cell density
 30 reached greater than 1.5×10^6 cells/mL, the culture was expanded into a 1 L spinner flask in 800 mL culture volume and incubated at 37°C, 7% CO₂. When the cell density reached greater than 1.5×10^6 cells/mL the culture was expanded into a 6 L spinner flask in 5000 mL culture volume and incubated at 37°C, 7% CO₂. When the

cell density reached greater than 1.5×10^6 cells/mL the culture was expanded into a 36 L spinner flask in 32 L culture volume and incubated at 37°C, 7% CO₂.

A 400 L reactor was sterilized and 230 mL of CD-CHO media was added. Before use, the reactor was checked for contamination. Approximately 30 L cells were transferred from the 36L spinner flasks to the 400 L bioreactor (Braun) at an inoculation density of 4.0×10^5 viable cells per ml and a total volume of 260L. Parameters were temperature setpoint, 37°C; Impeller Speed 40-55 RPM; Vessel Pressure: 3 psi; Air Sparge 0.5- 1.5 L/Min.; Air Overlay: 3 L/ min.. The reactor was sampled daily for cell counts, pH verification, media analysis, protein production and retention. Also, during the run nutrient feeds were added. At 120 hrs (day 5), 10.4L of Feed #1 Medium (4× CD-CHO + 33 g/L Glucose + 160 mL/L Glutamax-1™ + 83 mL/L Yeastolate + 33 mg/L rHuInsulin) was added. At 168 hours (day 7), 10.8 L of Feed #2 (2× CD-CHO + 33 g/L Glucose + 80 mL/L Glutamax-1™ + 167 mL/L Yeastolate + 0.92 g/L Sodium Butyrate) was added, and culture temperature was changed to 36.5°C. At 216 hours (day 9), 10.8 L of Feed #3 (1× CD-CHO + 50 g/L Glucose + 50 mL/L Glutamax-1™ + 250 mL/L Yeastolate + 1.80 g/L Sodium Butyrate) was added, and culture temperature was changed to 36° C. At 264 hours (day 11), 10.8 L of Feed #4 (1× CD-CHO + 33 g/L Glucose + 33 mL/L Glutamax-1™ + 250 mL/L Yeastolate + 0.92 g/L Sodium Butyrate) was added, and culture temperature was changed to 35.5° C. The addition of the feed media was observed to dramatically enhance the production of soluble rHuPH20 in the final stages of production. The reactor was harvested at 14 or 15 days or when the viability of the cells dropped below 40%. The process resulted in a final productivity of 17,000 Units per ml with a maximal cell density of 12 million cells/mL. At harvest, the culture was sampled for mycoplasma, bioburden, endotoxin and viral *in vitro* and *in vivo*, Transmission Electron Microscopy (TEM) and enzyme activity.

The culture was pumped by a peristaltic pump through four Millistak filtration system modules (Millipore) in parallel, each containing a layer of diatomaceous earth graded to 4-8 µm and a layer of diatomaceous earth graded to 1.4-1.1 µm, followed by a cellulose membrane, then through a second single Millistak filtration system (Millipore) containing a layer of diatomaceous earth graded to 0.4-0.11 µm and a layer of diatomaceous earth graded to <0.1 µm, followed by a cellulose membrane, and then through a 0.22 µm final filter into a sterile single use flexible bag with a 350 L capacity. The harvested cell culture fluid was supplemented with 10 mM EDTA

and 10 mM Tris to a pH of 7.5. The culture was concentrated 10× with a tangential flow filtration (TFF) apparatus using four Sartoslice TFF 30 kDa molecular weight cut-off (MWCO) polyether sulfone (PES) filter (Sartorius), followed by a 10× buffer exchange with 10 mM Tris, 20mM Na₂SO₄, pH 7.5 into a 0.22 µm final filter into a 50 L sterile storage bag.

The concentrated, diafiltered harvest was inactivated for virus. Prior to viral inactivation, a solution of 10% Triton X-100, 3% tri (n-butyl) phosphate (TNBP) was prepared. The concentrated, diafiltered harvest was exposed to 1% Triton X-100, 0.3% TNBP for 1 hour in a 36 L glass reaction vessel immediately prior to purification on the Q column.

B. Purification of Gen2 soluble rHuPH20

A Q Sepharose (Pharmacia) ion exchange column (9 L resin, H= 29 cm, D= 20 cm) was prepared. Wash samples were collected for a determination of pH, conductivity and endotoxin (LAL) assay. The column was equilibrated with 5 column volumes of 10 mM Tris, 20 mM Na₂SO₄, pH 7.5. Following viral inactivation, the concentrated, diafiltered harvest was loaded onto the Q column at a flow rate of 100 cm/hr. The column was washed with 5 column volumes of 10 mM Tris, 20 mM Na₂SO₄, pH 7.5 and 10 mM Hepes, 50 mM NaCl, pH 7.0. The protein was eluted with 10 mM Hepes, 400 mM NaCl, pH 7.0 into a 0.22 µm final filter into sterile bag. The eluate sample was tested for bioburden, protein concentration and hyaluronidase activity. A₂₈₀ absorbance reading were taken at the beginning and end of the exchange..

Phenyl-Sepharose (Pharmacia) hydrophobic interaction chromatography was next performed. A Phenyl-Sepharose (PS) column (19-21 L resin, H=29 cm, D= 30 cm) was prepared. The wash was collected and sampled for pH, conductivity and endotoxin (LAL assay). The column was equilibrated with 5 column volumes of 5 mM potassium phosphate, 0.5 M ammonium sulfate, 0.1 mM CaCl₂, pH 7.0. The protein eluate from the Q sepharose column was supplemented with 2M ammonium sulfate, 1 M potassium phosphate and 1 M CaCl₂ stock solutions to yield final concentrations of 5 mM, 0.5 M and 0.1 mM, respectively. The protein was loaded onto the PS column at a flow rate of 100 cm/hr and the column flow thru collected. The column was washed with 5 mM potassium phosphate, 0.5 M ammonium sulfate and 0.1 mM CaCl₂ pH 7.0 at 100 cm/hr and the wash was added to the collected flow thru. Combined with the column wash, the flow through was passed through a 0.22

µm final filter into a sterile bag. The flow through was sampled for bioburden, protein concentration and enzyme activity.

An aminophenyl boronate column (Promtix) was prepared. The wash was collected and sampled for pH, conductivity and endotoxin (LAL assay). The column
5 was equilibrated with 5 column volumes of 5 mM potassium phosphate, 0.5 M ammonium sulfate. The PS flow through containing purified protein was loaded onto the aminophenyl boronate column at a flow rate of 100 cm/hr. The column was washed with 5 mM potassium phosphate, 0.5 M ammonium sulfate, pH 7.0. The
10 column was washed with 20 mM bicine, 0.5 M ammonium sulfate, pH 9.0. The protein was eluted with 50 mM Hepes, 100 mM NaCl, pH 6.9 and passed through a sterile filter into a sterile bag. The eluted sample was tested for bioburden, protein concentration and enzyme activity.

The hydroxyapatite (HAP) column (Biorad) was prepared. The wash was
15 collected and test for pH, conductivity and endotoxin (LAL assay). The column was equilibrated with 5 mM potassium phosphate, 100 mM NaCl, 0.1 mM CaCl₂, pH 7.0. The aminophenyl boronate purified protein was supplemented to final concentrations of 5 mM potassium phosphate and 0.1 mM CaCl₂ and loaded onto the HAP column at a flow rate of 100 cm/hr. The column was washed with 5 mM potassium phosphate,
20 pH 7, 100 mM NaCl, 0.1 mM CaCl₂. The column was next washed with 10 mM potassium phosphate, pH 7, 100 mM NaCl, 0.1 mM CaCl₂. The protein was eluted with 70 mM potassium phosphate, pH 7.0 and passed through a 0.22µm sterile filter into a sterile bag. The eluted sample was tested for bioburden, protein concentration and enzyme activity.

25 The HAP purified protein was then passed through a viral removal filter. The sterilized Viosart filter (Sartorius) was first prepared by washing with 2 L of 70 mM potassium phosphate, pH 7.0. Before use, the filtered buffer was sampled for pH and conductivity. The HAP purified protein was pumped via a peristaltic pump through the 20 nM viral removal filter. The filtered protein in 70 mM potassium phosphate,
30 pH 7.0 was passed through a 0.22 µm final filter into a sterile bag. The viral filtered sample was tested for protein concentration, enzyme activity, oligosaccharide, monosaccharide and sialic acid profiling. The sample also was tested for process related impurities.

The protein in the filtrate was then concentrated to 10 mg/mL using a 10 kD molecular weight cut off (MWCO) Sartoon Slice tangential flow filtration (TFF) system (Sartorius). The filter was first prepared by washing with 10 mM histidine, 130 mM NaCl, pH 6.0 and the permeate was sampled for pH and conductivity.

- 5 Following concentration, the concentrated protein was sampled and tested for protein concentration and enzyme activity. A 6× buffer exchange was performed on the concentrated protein into the final buffer: 10 mM histidine, 130 mM NaCl, pH 6.0. Following buffer exchange, the concentrated protein was passed through a 0.22 µm filter into a 20 L sterile storage bag. The protein was sampled and tested for protein
10 concentration, enzyme activity, free sulfhydryl groups, oligosaccharide profiling and osmolarity.

The sterile filtered bulk protein was then aseptically dispensed at 20 mL into 30 mL sterile Teflon vials (Nalgene). The vials were then flash frozen and stored at -20 ± 5°C.

15 **C. Comparison of production and purification of Gen1 soluble rHuPH20 and Gen2 soluble rHuPH20**

- The production and purification of Gen2 soluble rHuPH20 in a 300L bioreactor cell culture contained some changes in the protocols compared to the production and purification Gen1 soluble rHuPH20 in a 100L bioreactor cell culture
20 (described in Example 13.B). Table 18 sets forth exemplary differences, in addition to simple scale up changes, between the methods.

Table 18		
Process Difference	Gen1 soluble rHuPH20	Gen2 soluble rHuPH20
Cell line	3D35M	2B2
Media used to expand cell inoculum	Contains 0.10 µM methotrexate (0.045 mg/L)	Contains 20 µM methotrexate (9 mg/L)
Media in 6L cultures onwards	Contains 0.10 µM methotrexate	Contains no methotrexate
36 L spinner flask	No instrumentation 20 L operating volume.	Equipped with instrumentation that monitors and controls pH, dissolved oxygen, sparge and overlay gas flow rate. 32 L operating volume
Final operating volume in bioreactor	Approx. 100 L in a 125 L bioreactor (initial culture volume + 65 L)	Approx. 300L in a 400L bioreactor (initial culture volume + 260L)

Culture media in final bioreactor	No rHuInsulin	5.0 mg/L rHuInsulin
Media feed volume	Scaled at 4% of the bioreactor cell culture volume i.e. 3.4, 3.5 and 3.7 L, resulting in a target bioreactor volume of ~92 L.	Scaled at 4% of the bioreactor cell culture volume i.e. 10.4, 10.8, 11.2 and 11.7 L, resulting in a target bioreactor volume of ~303L.
Media feed	<p>Feed #1 Medium: CD CHO + 50 g/L Glucose + 8mM GlutaMAX™-1</p> <p>Feed #2 (CD CHO + 50 g/L Glucose + 8 mM GlutaMAX + 1.1 g/L Sodium Butyrate</p> <p>Feed #3: CD CHO + 50 g/L Glucose + 8 mM GlutaMAX + 1.1 g/L Sodium Butyrate</p>	<p>Feed #1 Medium: 4× CD CHO + 33 g/L Glucose + 32 mM Glutamax + 16.6 g/L Yeastolate + 33 mg/L rHuInsulin</p> <p>Feed #2: 2× CD CHO + 33 g/L Glucose + 16 mM Glutamax + 33.4 g/L Yeastolate + 0.92 g/L Sodium Butyrate</p> <p>Feed #3: 1× CD CHO + 50 g/L Glucose + 10 mM Glutamax + 50 g/L Yeastolate + 1.80 g/L Sodium Butyrate</p> <p>Feed #4: 1× CD CHO + 33 g/L Glucose + 6.6 mM Glutamax + 50 g/L Yeastolate + 0.92 g/L Sodium Butyrate</p>
Filtration of bioreactor cell culture	<p>Four polyethersulfone filters (8.0 µm, 0.65 µm, 0.22 µm and 0.22 µm) in series</p> <p>100 L storage bag</p>	<p>1st stage - Four modules in parallel, each with a layer of diatomaceous earth graded to 4-8 µm and a layer of diatomaceous earth graded to 1.4-1.1 µm, followed by a cellulose membrane.</p> <p>2nd stage -single module containing a layer of diatomaceous earth graded to 0.4-0.11 µm and a layer of diatomaceous earth graded to <0.1 µm, followed by a cellulose membrane.</p> <p>3rd stage - 0.22 µm polyethersulfone filter</p>

		300L storage bag Harvested cell culture is supplemented with 10 mM EDTA, 10 mM Tris to a pH of 7.5.
Concentration and buffer exchange prior to chromatography	Concentrate with 2 TFF with Millipore Spiral Polyethersulfone 30K MWCO Filter Buffer Exchange the Concentrate 6× with 10 mM Hepes, 25 mM NaCl, pH 7.0 20L sterile storage bag	Concentrate using four Sartorius Sartoslice TFF 30K MWCO Filter Buffer Exchange the Concentrate 10× with 10 mM Tris, 20 mM Na2SO4, pH 7.5 50L sterile storage bag
Viral inactivation prior to chromatography	None	Viral inactivation performed with the addition of a 1% Triton X-100, 0.3% Tributyl Phosphate, pH 7.5,
1 st purification step (Q sepharose)	No absorbance reading	A280 measurements at the beginning and end
Viral filtration after chromatography	Pall DV-20 filter (20 nm)	Sartorius Virosart filter (20 nm)
Concentration and buffer exchange after chromatography	Hepes/saline pH 7.0 buffer Protein concentrated to 1 mg/ml	Histidine/saline, pH 6.0 buffer Protein concentrated to 10 mg/ml

Example 16

Determination of hyaluronidase activity of soluble rHuPH20

Hyaluronidase activity of soluble rHuPH20 in samples such as cell cultures, purification fractions and purified solutions was determined using a turbidometric assay, which based on the formation of an insoluble precipitate when hyaluronic acid binds with serum albumin. The activity is measured by incubating soluble rHuPH20 with sodium hyaluronate (hyaluronic acid) for a set period of time (10 minutes) and then precipitating the undigested sodium hyaluronate with the addition of acidified serum albumin. The turbidity of the resulting sample is measured at 640 nm after a 30 minute development period. The decrease in turbidity resulting from enzyme activity on the sodium hyaluronate substrate is a measure of the soluble rHuPH20 enzymatic activity. The method is run using a calibration curve generated with dilutions of a

soluble rHuPH20 assay working reference standard, and sample activity measurements are made relative to this calibration curve.

Dilutions of the sample were prepared in Enzyme Diluent Solutions. The Enzyme Diluent Solution was prepared by dissolving 33.0 ± 0.05 mg of hydrolyzed gelatin in 25.0 mL of the 50 mM PIPES Reaction Buffer (140 mM NaCl, 50 mM PIPES, pH 5.5) and 25.0 mL of SWFI, and diluting 0.2 mL of 25% Buminate solution into the mixture and vortexing for 30 seconds. This was performed within 2 hours of use and stored on ice until needed. The samples were diluted to an estimated 1-2 U/mL. Generally, the maximum dilution per step did not exceed 1:100 and the initial sample size for the first dilution was not be less than 20 μ L. The minimum sample volumes needed to perform the assay were: In-process Samples, FPLC Fractions: 80 μ L; Tissue Culture Supernatants: 1 mL; Concentrated Material 80 μ L; Purified or Final Step Material: 80 μ L. The dilutions were made in triplicate in a Low Protein Binding 96-well plate, and 30 μ L of each dilution was transferred to Optilux black/clear bottom plates (BD BioSciences).

Dilutions of known soluble rHuPH20 with a concentration of 2.5 U/mL were prepared in Enzyme Diluent Solution to generate a standard curve and added to the Optilux plate in triplicate. The dilutions included 0 U/mL, 0.25 U/mL, 0.5 U/mL, 1.0 U/mL, 1.5 U/mL, 2.0 U/mL, and 2.5 U/mL. "Reagent blank" wells that contained 60 μ L of Enzyme Diluent Solution were included in the plate as a negative control. The plate was then covered and warmed on a heat block for 5 minutes at 37°C. The cover was removed and the plate was shaken for 10 seconds. After shaking, the plate was returned to the plate to the heat block and the MULTIDROP 384 Liquid Handling Device was primed with the warm 0.25mg/mL sodium hyaluronate solution (prepared by dissolving 100 mg of sodium hyaluronate (LifeCore Biomedical) in 20.0 mL of SWFI. This was mixed by gently rotating and/or rocking at 2-8°C for 2-4 hours, or until completely dissolved). The reaction plate was transferred to the MULTIDROP 384 and the reaction was initiated by pressing the start key to dispense 30 μ L sodium hyaluronate into each well. The plate was then removed from the MULTIDROP 384 and shaken for 10 seconds before being transferred to a heat block with the plate cover replaced. The plate was incubated at 37°C for 10 minutes

The MULTIDROP 384 was prepared to stop the reaction by priming the machine with Serum Working Solution and changing the volume setting to 240 μ L. (25 mL of Serum Stock Solution [1 volume of Horse Serum (Sigma) was diluted with

9 volumes of 500 mM Acetate Buffer Solution and the pH was adjusted to 3.1 with hydrochloric acid] in 75 mL of 500 mM Acetate Buffer Solution). The plate was removed from the heat block and placed onto the MULTIDROP 384 and 240 μ L of serum Working Solutions was dispensed into the wells. The plate was removed and
5 shaken on a plate reader for 10 seconds. After a further 15 minutes, the turbidity of the samples was measured at 640 nm and the enzyme activity (in U/mL) of each sample was determined by fitting to the standard curve.

Specific activity (U/mg) was calculated by dividing the enzyme activity (U/ml) by the protein concentration (mg/mL).

10

Since modifications will be apparent to those of skill in this art, it is intended that this invention be limited only by the scope of the appended claims.

CLAIMS:

1. A method for treating a disease or condition of the extracellular matrix (ECM), comprising sub-epidermally administering to the ECM an activatable matrix-degrading enzyme (AMDE) and an activator, wherein:
 - 5 the AMDE is inactive in the ECM in the absence of the activator;
 - the activator, when administered to the ECM, provides an activating condition for the enzyme such that the AMDE is active; and
 - the activating condition is not present in the ECM prior to administration of the activator.
- 10 2. The method of claim 1, wherein the activator dissipates or is neutralized such that the AMDE is active for a limited or predetermined time.
3. The method of claim 1 or claim 2, wherein the AMDE is administered at a therapeutically effective amount.
4. The method of claim 1 or claim 2, wherein the activator is provided in
 - 15 the same composition as the AMDE or in a separate composition.
5. The method of claim 1 or claim 2, wherein the AMDE is administered together or separate from the activator.
6. The method of any of claims 1-5, wherein the activator and the AMDE are administered sequentially, simultaneously or intermittently.
- 20 7. The method of claim 1 or claim 2, wherein the AMDE is exposed to the activator prior to administration, such that the enzyme is active upon administration.
8. The method of claim 1 or claim 2, wherein the AMDE is exposed to the activator upon administration, such that the enzyme is active upon administration.
- 25 9. The method of any of claims 1-8, wherein sub-epidermal administration is selected from among subcutaneous administration, intramuscular administration, intralesional administration and intradermal administration.
10. The method of any of claims 1-9, wherein administration is subcutaneous administration.
- 30 11. The method of any of claims 1-10, wherein the activating conditions are selected from among pH, ionic strength, temperature and metal ions.
12. The method of any of claims 1-11, wherein the enzyme is substantially inactive at neutral pH.

13. The method of claim 11 or claim 12, wherein the activating condition is pH.
14. The method of any of claims 11-13, wherein the activating condition is an acidic pH.
- 5 15. The method of claim 14, wherein the pH is or is about in a range of 3 to 6.5, or 3.5 to 6, or 3 to 5.5, or 3 to 4.5, or 4 to 6, or 4 to 5.5, or 4.5 to 5, or 5 to 6.
16. The method of claim 14, wherein the pH is about or is 3, 3.5, 4, 4.5, 5, 5.5, 6 or 6.5.
17. The method of any of claims 13-16, wherein the activating condition is pH and the activator is a buffered solution at the pH.
- 10 18. The method of claim 17, wherein the activator is an acidic buffered solution.
19. The method of claim 18, wherein the buffer contains an acid selected from among 2-(N-morpholino)ethanesulfonic acid) (MES), acetic acid, citric acid, citric phosphate and histidine.
- 15 20. The method of claim 19, wherein the buffer contains 2-(N-morpholino)ethanesulfonic acid) (MES).
21. The method of any of claims 17-20, wherein the ionic strength of the buffer is selected such that the AMDE is active for a predetermined time upon exposure to the ECM.
- 20 22. The method of claim 21, wherein the predetermined time is or is about 1 minute, 2 minute, 3 minute, 4 minute, 5 minute, 6 minute, 7 minute, 8 minute, 9 minute, 10 minute, 20 minute, 30 minute, 40 minute, 50 minute, 1 hour, 2 hour, 3 hour or 4 hours.
- 25 23. The method of claim 11, wherein the activating condition is a metal ion and the metal ion is Ca^{2+} .
24. The method of claim 11, wherein the activating condition is temperature and the temperature is or is about 20°C, 21°C, 22°C, 23°C, 24°C, 25°C, 26°C, 27°C, 28°C, 29°C or 30°C.
- 30 25. The method of claim 11, wherein the AMDE requires more than one activating condition for activity.
26. The method of any of claims 1-25, wherein the AMDE is selected from among a cathepsin, a calpain, and a heparanase.
27. The method of claim 26, wherein the AMDE is a zymogen.

28. The method of claim 26, wherein the AMDE is a mature protein that is a single chain or two chain form.

29. The method of any of claims 26-28, wherein the AMDE is a cathepsin and the cathepsin is a cysteine protease or aspartic protease.

5 30. The method of claim 29, wherein the cathepsin is selected from among cathepsin S, cathepsin K, cathepsin L, cathepsin B, cathepsin C, cathepsin H, cathepsin F, cathepsin O, cathepsin R, cathepsin V, cathepsin W, cathepsin D and cathepsin E.

10 31. The method of claim 29 or claim 30, wherein the cathepsin has a sequence of amino acids selected from any of SEQ ID NOS: 57, 60, 1, 65, 180, 68, 71, 74, 77, 183, 186, 189, 80, 195, 90, 93 and 96, or is an allelic, or species variant or other variant of any of SEQ ID NOS: 57, 60, 1, 65, 180, 68, 71, 74, 77, 183, 186, 189, 80, 195, 90, 93 and 96.

15 32. The method of claim 31, wherein the other variant has a 60%, 70%, 80%, 90%, 91%, 92%, 93%, 94%, 95%, 96%, 97%, 98% or 99% sequence identity compared to a sequence of amino acids set forth in any of SEQ ID NOS: 57, 60, 1, 65, 180, 68, 71, 74, 77, 183, 186, 189, 80, 195, 90, 93 and 96.

20 33. The method of any of claims 29-32, wherein the cathepsin is selected from among cathepsin B, cathepsin F, cathepsin H, cathepsin K, cathepsin L, cathepsin V and cathepsin D.

34. The method of claim 33, wherein the cathepsin is cathepsin L.

35. A method for treating a disease or condition of the extracellular matrix (ECM), comprising administering an activatable matrix-degrading enzyme (AMDE) and an activator, wherein:

25 the AMDE is inactive at neutral pH;

the activator provides an acidic pH activating condition for the enzyme such that the AMDE is active upon or after administration;

the activating condition is not present at the site of administration prior to administration of the activator; and

30 the AMDE is substantially active at pH 5.5.

36. The method of claim 35, wherein the activator dissipates or is neutralized such that the AMDE is active for a limited or predetermined time.

37. The method of claim 35 or claim 36, wherein the AMDE is administered at a therapeutically effective amount.

38. The method of claim 35 or claim 36, wherein the activator is provided in the same composition as the AMDE or in a separate composition.

39. The method of claim 35 or claim 36, wherein the AMDE is
5 administered together or separate from the activator.

40. The method of any of claims 35-39, wherein the activator and the AMDE are administered sequentially, simultaneously or intermittently.

41. The method of claim 35 or claim 36, wherein the AMDE is exposed to the activator prior to administration, such that the enzyme is active upon
10 administration.

42. The method of claim 35 or claim 36, wherein the AMDE is exposed to the activator upon administration, such that the enzyme is active upon administration.

43. The method of any of claims 35-42, wherein administration is selected from among subcutaneous, intramuscular, intralesional, intradermal, topical,
15 transdermal, intravenous, oral and rectal.

44. The method of claim 43, wherein administration is sub-epidermal administration.

45. The method of claim 44, wherein administration is subcutaneous administration.

20 46. The method of any of claims 35-45, wherein the pH of the acidic pH activating condition is or is about in a range of 3 to 6.5, or 3.5 to 6, or 3 to 5.5, or 3 to 4.5, or 4 to 6, or 4 to 5.5, or 4.5 to 5, or 5 to 6.

47. The method of any of claims 35-46, wherein the pH of the acidic pH activating condition is about or is 3, 3.5, 4, 4.5, 5, 5.5, 6 or 6.5.

25 48. The method of any of claims 35-47, wherein the activator provides the acidic pH activating condition as a buffered solution at the acidic pH.

49. The method of claim 48, wherein the buffer contains an acid selected from among 2-(N-morpholino)ethanesulfonic acid) (MES), acetic acid, citric acid, citric phosphate and histidine.

30 50. The method of claim 49, wherein the buffer contains 2-(N-morpholino)ethanesulfonic acid) (MES).

51. The method of any of claims 48-50, wherein the ionic strength of the buffer is selected such that the AMDE is active for a predetermined time upon administration.

52. The method of claim 51, wherein the predetermined time is or is about
 5 1 minute, 2 minute, 3 minute, 4 minute, 5 minute, 6 minute, 7 minute, 8 minute, 9 minute, 10 minute, 15 minutes, 20 minute, 30 minute, 40 minute, 50 minute, 1 hour, 2 hour, 3 hour or 4 hours.

53. The method of any of claims 35-52, wherein the AMDE is a lysosomal enzyme.

10 54. The method of any of claims 35-53, wherein the AMDE is a zymogen.

55. The method of any of claims 35-53, wherein the AMDE is a mature protein that is a single chain or two chain form..

56. The method of any of claims 35-55, wherein the AMDE is a cathepsin or a heparanase.

15 57. The method of any of claim 56, wherein the AMDE is a cathepsin and the cathepsin is a cysteine protease or aspartic protease.

58. The method of claim 37, wherein the cathepsin is selected from among cathepsin B, cathepsin F, cathepsin H, cathepsin K, cathepsin L, cathepsin V and cathepsin D.

20 59. The method of claim 57 or claim 58, wherein the cathepsin has a sequence of amino acids selected from any of SEQ ID NOS: 65, 71, 183, 68, 60, 1, 189 and 90, or is an allelic, or species variant or other variant of any of SEQ ID NOS: 65, 71, 183, 68, 60, 1, 189 and 90.

25 60. The method of claim 59, wherein the other variant has a 60%, 70%, 80%, 90%, 91%, 92%, 93%, 94%, 95%, 96%, 97%, 98% or 99% sequence identify compared to a sequence of amino acids set forth in any of SEQ ID NOS: 65, 71, 183, 68, 60, 1, 189 and 90.

61. The method of any of claims 57-60, wherein the cathepsin is cathepsin L.

30 62. The method of claim 61, wherein the activator is an acidic buffered solution that is or is about pH 5.0.

63. The method of claim 62, wherein the acidic buffered solution contains MES.

64. A method for treating a disease or condition of the extracellular matrix (ECM), comprising administering to the ECM an activatable matrix-degrading enzyme (AMDE) and an activator, wherein:

the AMDE is inactive in the ECM in the absence of the activator;

5 the activator, when administered to the ECM, provides an activating condition for the enzyme such that the AMDE is active;

the activating condition is not present in the ECM prior to administration of the activator; and

10 the activator is selected from among metal ions, temperature and ionic strength.

65. The method of claim 64, wherein the activator dissipates or is neutralized such that the AMDE is active for a limited or predetermined time.

66. The method of claim 64 or claim 65, wherein the AMDE is administered at a therapeutically effective amount.

15 67. The method of any of claims 64-66, wherein the activator is provided in the same composition as the AMDE or in a separate composition.

68. The method of any of claims 64-66, wherein the AMDE is administered together or separate from the activator.

20 69. The method of any of claims 64-68, wherein the activator and the AMDE are administered sequentially, simultaneously or intermittently.

70. The method of any of claims 64-66, wherein the AMDE is exposed to the activator prior to administration, such that the enzyme is active upon administration.

25 71. The method of claim any of claims 64-66, wherein the AMDE is exposed to the activator upon administration, such that the enzyme is active upon administration.

72. The method of any of claims 64-66, wherein administration is selected from among subcutaneous, intramuscular, intralesional, intradermal, topical, transdermal, intravenous, oral and rectal.

30 73. The method of claim 72, wherein administration is sub-epidermal administration.

74. The method of claim 73, wherein administration is subcutaneous administration.

75. The method of any of claims 1-74, wherein upon or after administration the AMDE cleaves any one or more extracellular matrix (ECM) components.

76. The method of claim 75, wherein cleavage of any one or more ECM components is for a limited time.

77. The method of claim 75, wherein cleavage of any one or more ECM components is for a predetermined time.

78. The method of any of claims 75-77, wherein the one or more ECM components is selected from among a collagen, an elastin, a fibronectin or a proteoglycan.

79. The method of claim 78, wherein the ECM component is collagen and the collagen is selected from among type I, type II, type III or type IV collagen.

80. The method of claim 79, wherein the AMDE has increased substrate specificity for type I collagen over type IV collagen.

81. The method of any of claims 1-80, wherein the disease or condition of the ECM is a collagen-mediated disease or condition.

82. The method of claim 81, wherein the collagen-mediated disease or condition is selected from among cellulite, Dupuytren's disease, Peyronie's disease, Ledderhose fibrosis, stiff joints, existing scars, scleroderma, lymphedema and collagenous colitis.

83. The method of claim 82, wherein the collagen-mediated disease or condition is stiff joints that is frozen shoulder.

84. The method of claim 82, wherein the collagen-mediated disease or condition is existing scars that is selected from among surgical adhesions, keloids, hypertrophic scars and depressed scars.

85. The method of any of claims 1-84, further comprising administering a pharmacologic agent selected from among other biologics, small molecule compounds, dispersing agents, anesthetics and vasoconstrictors, or combinations thereof.

86. The method of claim 85, wherein the dispersing agent is a hyaluronidase.

87. The method of claim 86, wherein the hyaluronidase is PH20.

88. The method of claim 86 or claim 87, wherein the hyaluronidase is soluble.

89. The method of claim 88, wherein the hyaluronidase has a sequence of amino acids set forth in SEQ ID NO:226, or is an allelic or species variant or other variant thereof.

90. The method of claim 89, wherein the other variant has a sequence of
5 amino acids that has 60%, 70%, 80%, 90%, 95%, 96%, 97%, 98%, 99% or more sequence identity to the sequence of amino acids set forth in SEQ ID NO:226.

91. The method of any of claims 86-90, wherein the hyaluronidase is glycosylated.

92. The method of claim 85, wherein the anesthetic is lidocaine.

10 93. The method of claim 85, wherein the vasoconstrictor is an alpha adrenergic receptor agonist.

94. The method of claim 85, wherein the alpha adrenergic receptor agonist is selected from among levonordefrin, epinephrine and norepinephrine.

15 95. The method of claim 94, wherein the alpha adrenergic receptor agonist is epinephrine.

96. The method of any of claims 85-95, wherein the other agent(s) is administered simultaneously, sequentially or intermittently from the AMDE.

97. The method of any of claims 85-95, wherein the other agent(s) is administered prior to administration of the AMDE.

20 98. A method of treating a disease or condition of the extracellular matrix (ECM), comprising sub-epidermally administering an activatable matrix-degrading enzyme (AMDE), an activator, a hyaluronidase, lidocaine and epinephrine wherein:
the AMDE is inactive in the ECM in the absence of the activator;
the activator, when administered to the ECM, provides an activating condition
25 for the enzyme such that the AMDE is active; and
the activating condition is not present in the ECM prior to administration of the activator.

99. The method of claim 98, wherein the enzyme, hyaluronidase, lidocaine and epinephrine are administered simultaneously, sequentially or intermittently,
30 provided that the lidocaine is administered prior to the enzyme.

100. The method of claim 98 or claim 99, wherein the hyaluronidase, lidocaine and epinephrine are administered prior to administration of the enzyme.

101. The method of any of claims 98-100, wherein the hyaluronidase, lidocaine and epinephrine are administered simultaneously.

102. The method of any of claims 98-101, wherein the hyaluronidase, lidocaine and epinephrine are administered in a single composition.

103. A method of treating a disease or condition of the extracellular matrix (ECM), comprising administering an activatable matrix-degrading enzyme (AMDE) and an activator wherein:

the AMDE is inactive in the ECM in the absence of the activator;

the activator, when administered, provides an activating condition for the enzyme such that the AMDE is active;

the activating condition is not present in the ECM prior to administration of the activator; and

the activator is selected from among a metal ion, temperature or ionic strength.

104. The method of claim 103, wherein administration is selected from among subcutaneous, intramuscular, intralesional, intradermal, topical, transdermal, intravenous, oral and rectal.

105. A method of treating a collagen-mediated disease or condition, comprising sub-epidermally administering to the ECM a therapeutically effective amount of an activatable cathepsin L and an activator, wherein:

the activatable cathepsin L is inactive in the ECM in the absence of the activator;

the activator, when administered to the ECM, provides an activating condition for the enzyme such that the activatable cathepsin L is active;

the activating condition is not present in the ECM prior to administration of the activator; and

the activating condition is acidic pH.

106. The method of claim 105, wherein the cathepsin L has a sequence of amino acids set forth in SEQ ID NO:1 or is an allelic, species or other variant thereof.

107. The method of claim 106, wherein the other variant has a 60%, 70%, 80%, 90%, 91%, 92%, 93%, 94%, 95%, 96%, 97%, 98% or 99% sequence identity compared to a sequence of amino acids set forth in any of SEQ ID NOS: 1.

108. A container, comprising two compartments, wherein:

a first compartment contains a therapeutically effective amount of an activatable matrix-degrading enzyme (AMDE), wherein the amount is for single

dosage or a plurality of dosages and a single dosage is effective for treatment of a disease or condition of the ECM ; and

a second compartment contains an activator, wherein the activator is one that activates the enzyme.

5 109. The container of claim 108, wherein the enzyme is substantially active at pH 5.5

110. The container of claims 108 and 109, wherein the enzyme is substantially inactive at neutral pH.

10 111. The container of any of claims 108-110, wherein the disease or condition of the ECM is a collagen-mediated disease or condition.

112. The container of claim 111, wherein the collagen-mediated disease or condition is selected from among cellulite, Dupuytren's disease, Peyronie's disease, Ledderhose fibrosis, stiff joints, existing scars, scleroderma, lymphedema and collagenous colitis.

15 113. The container of claim 112, wherein the collagen-mediated disease or condition is stiff joints that is frozen shoulder.

114. The container of claim 112, wherein the collagen-mediated disease or condition is existing scars that is selected from among surgical adhesions, keloids, hypertrophic scars and depressed scars.

20 115. The container of claim any of claims 108-114, further comprising a mixing compartment.

116. The container of any of claims 108-115 that is a tube or bottle.

117. The container of any of claims 108-115 that is a syringe.

25 118. The container of any of claims 108-117, further comprising a needle for injection.

119. The container of any of claims 108-118, wherein:
the activator provides an activating condition selected from among pH, metal ion or ionic strength, and the activator is provided in a liquid solution or suspension.

120. The container of claim 119, wherein the liquid solution is a buffer.

30 121. The container of claim 119 or claim 120, wherein the pH is acidic.

122. The container of claim 121, wherein the pH is or is about in a range of 3 to 6.5, or 3.5 to 6, or 3 to 5.5, or 3 to 4.5, or 4 to 6, or 4 to 5.5, or 4.5 to 5, or 5 to 6.

123. The container of claim 121, wherein the pH is about or is 3, 3.5, 4, 4.5, 5, 5.5, 6 or 6.5.

124. The container of any of claims 120-123, wherein the activator is an acidic buffered solution.

125. The container of claim 124, wherein the buffer contains an acid selected from among 2-(N-morpholino)ethanesulfonic acid) (MES), acetic acid, citric acid, citric phosphate and histidine.

126. The container of claim 125, wherein the buffer contains 2-(N-morpholino)ethanesulfonic acid) (MES).

127. The container of claim 125 or claim 126, wherein the ionic strength of the buffer is selected such that the AMDE is active for a predetermined time upon administration.

128. The container of claim 119, wherein the activating condition is a metal ion and the metal ion is Ca^{2+} .

129. The container of any of claims 108-128, wherein the AMDE is selected from among a cathepsin, calpain and a heparanase.

130. The container of any of claims 108-129, wherein the AMDE is a lysosomal enzyme.

131. The container of claim 129 or claim 130, wherein the AMDE is a zymogen.

132. The container of claim 129 or claim 130, wherein the AMDE is a mature protein that is a single chain or two chain form..

133. The container of any of claims 129-133, wherein the AMDE is a cathepsin and the cathepsin is a cysteine protease or aspartic protease.

134. The container of claim 133, wherein the cathepsin is selected from among cathepsin S, cathepsin K, cathepsin L, cathepsin B, cathepsin C, cathepsin H, cathepsin F, cathepsin O, cathepsin R, cathepsin V, cathepsin W, cathepsin D and cathepsin E.

135. The container of claim 134, wherein the cathepsin has a sequence of amino acids selected from any of SEQ ID NOS: 57, 60, 1, 65, 180, 68, 71, 74, 77, 183, 186, 189, 80, 195, 90, 93 and 96, or is an allelic, or species variant or other variant of any of SEQ ID NOS: 57, 60, 1, 65, 180, 68, 71, 74, 77, 183, 186, 189, 80, 195, 90, 93 and 96.

136. The container of claim 135, wherein the other variant has a 60%, 70%, 80%, 90%, 91%, 92%, 93%, 94%, 95%, 96%, 97%, 98% or 99% sequence identify

compared to a sequence of amino acids set forth in any of SEQ ID NOS: 57, 60, 1, 65, 180, 68, 71, 74, 77, 183, 186, 189, 80, 195, 90, 93 and 96.

137. The container of any of claims 108-136, wherein the AMDE and activator are provided in an amount for multiple dosage administrations.

5 138. The container of any of claims 108-137, wherein the AMDE and activator are provided in a single unit dosage.

139. The container of claim 138, wherein the AMDE in the container is or is about 10 µg to 100 mg, 50 µg to 75 mg, 100 µg to 50 mg, 250 µg to 25 mg, 500 µg to 10 mg, 1 mg to 5 mg, or 2 mg to 4 mg.

10 140. The container of any of claims 108-139, wherein the total volume of liquid in the container is or is about 1 -100 ml, 1 -50 ml, 10- 50 ml, 10-30 ml, 1-20 ml, or 1-10 ml.

141. The container of any of claims 108-140, wherein the AMDE is in solution or suspension.

15 142. The container of any of claims 108-141, wherein the AMDE is lyophilized.

143. A container, comprising two compartments, wherein:

a first compartment contains a therapeutically effective amount of an activatable cathepsin L, wherein the amount is effective for treatment of a disease or
20 condition of the extracellular matrix (ECM); and

a second compartment contains an acidic buffer that is one that activates the cathepsin L.

144. The container of claim 143, wherein the disease or condition is a collagen-mediated disease or condition.

25 145. The container of claim 144, wherein the collagen-mediated disease or condition is selected from among cellulite, Dupuytren's disease, Peyronie's disease, Ledderhose fibrosis, stiff joints, existing scars, scleroderma, lymphedema and collagenous colitis.

146. The container of claim 145, wherein the collagen-mediated disease or
30 condition is stiff joints that is frozen shoulder.

147. The container of claim 145, wherein the collagen-mediated disease or condition is existing scars that is selected from among surgical adhesions, keloids, hypertrophic scars and depressed scars.

148. The container of any of claims 143-147, wherein the pH of the acidic buffer has a range that is or is about 4.5 to 6.

149. The container of any of claims 143-147, wherein the pH of the acidic buffer is or is about 4.5, 5, 5.5 or 6.

5 150. The container of any of claims 143-157, wherein the buffer contains an acid selected from among 2-(N-morpholino)ethanesulfonic acid) (MES), acetic acid, citric acid, citric phosphate and histidine.

151. The container of claim 150, wherein the buffer contains 2-(N-morpholino)ethanesulfonic acid) (MES).

10 152. The container of claim 151, wherein the pH is 5.

153. The container of any of claims 150-152, wherein the ionic strength of the buffer is selected such that the AMDE is active for a predetermined time upon administration.

154. The container of any of claims 143-153, wherein the cathepsin L has a
15 sequence of amino acids set forth in SEQ ID NOS: 1, or is an allelic, or species variant or other variant of any of SEQ ID NOS:1.

155. The container of claim 154, wherein the other variant has a 60%, 70%, 80%, 90%, 91%, 92%, 93%, 94%, 95%, 96%, 97%, 98% or 99% sequence identify compared to a sequence of amino acids set forth in any of SEQ ID NOS: 1.

20 156. The container of any of claims 143-155, wherein the activatable cathepsin L is lyophilized.

157. The container of any of claims 143-156, wherein activatable cathepsin L in the container is or is about 10 µg to 100 mg, 50 µg to 75 mg, 100 µg to 50 mg, 250 µg to 25 mg, 500 µg to 10 mg, 1 mg to 5 mg, or 2 mg to 4 mg.

25 158. The container of any of claims 143-157, wherein the total volume in the container is or is about 1 -100 ml, 1 -50 ml, 10- 50 ml, 10-30 ml, 1-20 ml, or 1-10 ml.

159. A combination, comprising:

the container of any of claims 108-158; and

30 one or more additional containers containing another pharmacologically effective agent selected from among biologics, small molecule compounds, dispersing agents, anesthetics and vasoconstrictors and combinations thereof.

160. The combination of claim 159, wherein the pharmaceutically effective agent is a dispersing agent that is a hyaluronidase.

161. The combination of claim 160, wherein the hyaluronidase is PH20.
162. The combination of claim 160 or claim 161, wherein the hyaluronidase is soluble.
163. The combination of claim 162, wherein the hyaluronidase has a
5 sequence of amino acids set forth in SEQ ID NO:226, or is an allelic or species variant or other variant thereof.
164. The combination of claim 163, wherein the other variant has a sequence of amino acids that has 60%, 70%, 80%, 90%, 95%, 96%, 97%, 98%, 99% or more sequence identity to the sequence of amino acids set forth in SEQ ID
10 NO:226.
165. The combination of any of claims 162-166, wherein the hyaluronidase is glycosylated.
166. The combination of any of claims 160-165, wherein the hyaluronidase in the container is at or about 10 Units to 500,000 Units, 100 Units to 100,000 Units,
15 500 Units to 50,000 Units, 1000 Units to 10,000 Units, 5000 Units to 7500 Units, 5000 Units to 50,000 Units, or 1,000 Units to 10,000 Units.
167. The combination of claim 159, wherein the pharmaceutically effective agent is an anesthetic that is lidocaine.
168. The combination of claim 167, wherein the lidocaine in the container is
20 at or about 10 mg to 1000 mg, 100 mg to 500 mg, 200 mg to 400 mg, 20 mg to 60 mg, or 30 mg to 50 mg.
169. The combination of claim 159, wherein the pharmaceutically effective agent is a vasoconstrictor that is an alpha adrenergic receptor agonist.
170. The combination of claim 169, wherein the alpha adrenergic receptor
25 agonist is selected from among levonordefrin, epinephrine and norepinephrine.
171. The combination of claim 170, wherein the alpha adrenergic receptor agonist is epinephrine in an amount to effect vasoconstriction.
172. The combination of claim 171, wherein the epinephrine in the container is at or about 10 µg to 5 mg, 50 µg to 1 mg, 50 µg to 500 µg, 50 µg to 250
30 µg, 100 µg to 500 µg, 200 µg to 400 µg, 1 mg to 5 mg or 2 mg to 4 mg.
173. The combination of any of claims 159-172, wherein the pharmacologically effective agents are provided in separate containers.
174. The combination of any of claims 159-173, wherein:

the additional container comprises at least two pharmacologically effect agents; and

the agents are provided as separate compositions separated from each other.

175. The combination of any of claims 159-173, wherein the pharmacologic agents are provided in the same container in the same composition.

176. The combination of any of claims 159-175, wherein the additional container contains a hyaluronidase, lidocaine and epinephrine.

177. The combination of any of claims 159-176, wherein the additional container(s) is a syringe.

178. The combination of any of claims 159-176, wherein the total volume in the additional container(s) is or is about 1 -100 ml, 1 -50 ml, 10- 50 ml, 10-30 ml, 1-20 ml, or 1-10 ml.

179. A kit, comprising the container of any of claims 108-158, a device for administration and, optionally instructions for administration.

180. A kit, comprising the combination of any of claims 159-178, a device for administration and, optionally instructions for administration.

181. The container of claim 108, where in the amount of AMDE is for single dosage administration.

182. A combination, comprising an activatable cathepsin L and a hyaluronidase.

183. The combination of claim 182, wherein the hyaluronidase is rHuPH20.

184. The combination of claim 182 or claim 183, wherein the cathepsin L and the hyaluronidase are in separate compositions or are in a single composition.

184. The combination of claim 182, further comprising an acidic buffer that activates the cathepsin L.

185. The combination of claim 182 or claim 183, wherein the cathepsin L and the hyaluronidase are in a single composition formulated as a pharmaceutical composition.

186. A pharmaceutical composition, comprising an amount of cathepsin L for treatment of an ECM-mediated disease or condition upon administration simultaneously or sequentially with an acidic buffer, wherein:

the composition is formulated for single dosage administration; and
the buffer has a pH that activates cathepsin L.

187. The composition of claim 186, wherein the amount of cathepsin L is or is about 10 µg to 100 mg, 50 µg to 75 mg, 100 µg to 50 mg, 250 µg to 25 mg, 500 µg to 10 mg, 1 mg to 5 mg, or 2 mg to 4 mg.

188. The composition of claim 186 or claim 187, further comprising one or
5 more of lidocaine, epinephrine and a hyaluronidase.

ABSTRACT

Methods and combinations are provided for controlling the duration of action, *in vivo*, of matrix-degrading enzymes. The methods and combinations permit temporary in-vivo activation of matrix-degrading enzymes upon administration to the

5 extra cellular matrix (or "ECM"). Matrix-degrading enzymes having a controlled duration of action can be used to treat ECM-mediated diseases or disorders characterized by increased deposition or accumulation of one or more ECM components.